

APPENDIX A ANSWERS

Chapter 1

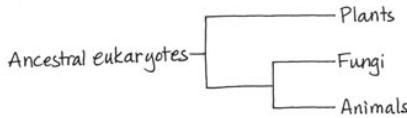
Concept Check 1.1

1. Examples: A molecule consists of *atoms* bonded together. Each organelle has an orderly arrangement of *molecules*. Photosynthetic plant cells contain *organelles* called chloroplasts. A tissue consists of a group of similar *cells*. Organs such as the heart are constructed from several *tissues*. A complex multicellular organism, such as a plant, has several types of *organs*, such as leaves and roots. A population is a set of *organisms* of the same species. A community consists of *populations* of the various species inhabiting a specific area. An ecosystem consists of a biological *community* along with the nonliving factors important to life, such as air, soil, and water. The biosphere is made up of all of Earth's *ecosystems*. 2. (a) New properties emerge at successive levels of biological organization: Structure and function are correlated. (b) Life's processes involve the expression and transmission of genetic information. (c) Life requires the transfer and transformation of energy and matter. 3. Some possible answers: *Organization (Emergent properties)*: The ability of a human heart to pump blood requires an intact heart; it is not a capability of any of the heart's tissues or cells working alone. *Organization (Structure and function)*: The strong, sharp teeth of a wolf are well suited to grasping and dismembering its prey. *Information*: Human eye color is determined by the combination of genes inherited from the two parents. *Energy and Matter*: A plant, such as a grass, absorbs energy from the sun and transforms it into molecules that act as stored fuel. Animals can eat parts of the plant and use the food for energy to carry out their activities. *Interactions (Ecosystems)*: A mouse eats food, such as nuts or grasses, and deposits some of the food material as wastes (feces and urine). Construction of a nest rearranges the physical environment and may hasten degradation of some of its components. The mouse may also act as food for a predator. *Interactions (Molecules)*: When your stomach is full, it signals your brain to decrease your appetite. *Evolution*: All plants have chloroplasts, indicating their descent from a common ancestor.

Concept Check 1.2

1. An address pinpoints a location by tracking from broader to narrower categories—a state, city, zip, street, and building number. This is analogous to the groups-subordinate-to-groups structure of biological taxonomy. 2. The naturally occurring heritable variation in a population is “edited” by natural selection because individuals with heritable traits better suited to the environment survive and reproduce more successfully than others. Over time, better-suited individuals persist and their percentage in the population increases, while less well-suited individuals become less prevalent—a type of population editing.

3.



Concept Check 1.3

1. Inductive reasoning derives generalizations from specific cases; deductive reasoning predicts specific outcomes from general premises. 2. The fur coat color of the mouse models is the independent variable because this is the variable that was changed intentionally by the researchers. Predation is the dependent variable, measured by the investigators and recorded as the proportion of the total number of attacked models. 3. Compared to a hypothesis, a scientific theory is usually more general and substantiated by a much greater amount of evidence. Natural selection is an explanatory idea that applies to all kinds of organisms and is supported by vast amounts of evidence of various kinds. 4. Based on the mouse coloration in Figure 1.25, you might expect that the mice that live on the sandy soil would be lighter in color and those that live on the lava rock would be much darker. And in fact, that is what researchers have found. You would predict that each color of mouse would be less preyed upon in its native habitat than it would be in the other habitat. (Research results also support this prediction.) You could repeat the Hoekstra experiment with colored models, painted to resemble these two types of mouse. Or you could try transplanting some of each population to its non-native habitat and counting how many you can recapture over the next few days, then comparing the four samples as was done in Hoekstra's experiment. (The painted models are easier to recapture, of course!) In the live mouse transplantation experiment, you would have to do controls to eliminate the variable represented by the transplanted mice being in a new, unknown territory. You could control for the transplantation process by transplanting some dark mice from one area of lava rock to one far distant, and some light mice from one area of sandy soil to a distant area.

Concept Check 1.4

1. Science aims to understand natural phenomena and how they work, while technology involves application of scientific discoveries for a particular purpose or to solve a specific problem. 2. Natural selection could be operating. Malaria is



present in sub-Saharan Africa, so there might be an advantage to people with the sickle-cell disease form of the gene that makes them more able to survive and pass on their genes to offspring. Among those of African descent living in the United States, where malaria is absent, there would be no advantage, so they would be selected against more strongly, resulting in fewer individuals with the sickle-cell disease form of the gene.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

1.1 Evolution explains the most fundamental aspects of all life on Earth. It accounts for the common features shared by all forms of life due to descent from a common ancestor, while also providing an explanation for how the great diversity of living organisms on the planet has arisen. 1.2 Ancestors of the dandelion plant may have exhibited variation in how well their seeds spread to fertile soil for rooting. The variant plants that produced seeds that could travel farther may have had less competition upon reaching fertile soil. They may therefore have survived better and been able to produce more offspring. Over time, a higher and higher proportion of individuals in the population would have had the adaptation of parachute-like structures attached to seeds for seed dispersal. 1.3 Gathering and interpreting data are core activities in the scientific process, and they are affected by, and affect in turn, three other arenas of the scientific process: exploration and discovery, community analysis and feedback, and societal benefits and outcomes. 1.4 Different approaches taken by scientists studying natural phenomena at different levels complement each other, so more is learned about each problem being studied. A diversity of backgrounds among scientists may lead to fruitful ideas in the same way that important innovations have often arisen where a mix of cultures coexist, due to multiple different viewpoints.

Test Your Understanding

1.b 2.d 3.a 4.c 5.c 6.c 7.b 8.c 9.a 10.d

11. Your figure should show: (1) For the biosphere, the Earth with an arrow coming out of a tropical ocean; (2) for the ecosystem, a distant view of a coral reef; (3) for the community, a collection of reef animals and algae, with corals, fishes, some seaweed, and any other organisms you can think of; (4) for the population, a group of fish of the same species; (5) for the organism, one fish from your population; (6) for the organ, the fish's stomach, and for the organ system, the whole digestive tract (see Chapter 41 for help); (7) for a tissue, a group of similar cells from the stomach; (8) for a cell, one cell from the tissue, showing its nucleus and a few other organelles; (9) for an organelle, the nucleus, where most of the cell's DNA is located; and (10) for a molecule, a DNA double helix. Your sketches can be very rough!

Chapter 2

Figure Questions

Figure 2.7 Atomic number = 12; 12 protons, 12 electrons; 3 electron shells; 2 valence electrons Figure 2.14 One possible answer:

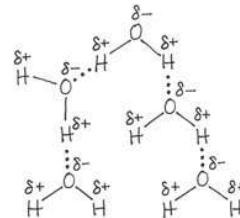


Figure 2.17 The plant is submerged in water (H_2O), in which the CO_2 is dissolved. The sun's energy is used to make sugar, which is found in the plant and can act as food for the plant itself, as well as for animals that eat the plant. The oxygen (O_2) is present in the bubbles.

Concept Check 2.1

1. Table salt (sodium chloride) is made up of sodium and chlorine. We are able to eat the compound, showing that it has different properties from those of a metal (sodium) and a poisonous gas (chlorine). 2. Yes, because an organism requires trace elements, even though only in small amounts. 3. A person with an iron deficiency will probably show fatigue and other effects of a low oxygen level in the blood. (The condition is called anemia and can also result from too few red blood cells or abnormal hemoglobin.) 4. Variant ancestral plants that could tolerate elevated levels of the elements in serpentine soils could grow and reproduce there. (Plants that were well adapted to nonserpentine soils would not be expected to survive in serpentine areas.) The offspring of the variants would also vary, with those most capable of thriving under serpentine conditions growing best and reproducing most. Over many generations, this probably led to the serpentine-adapted species we see today.

Concept Check 2.2

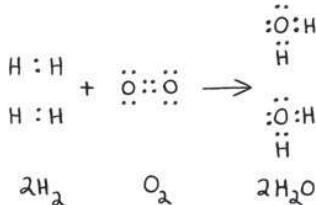
1. 7 2. ^{15}N 3. 9 electrons; two electron shells; 1s, 2s, 2p (three orbitals); 1 electron is needed to fill the valence shell. 4. The elements in a row all have the same number of electron shells. In a column, all the elements have the same number of electrons in their valence shells.

Concept Check 2.3

1. Each carbon atom has only three covalent bonds instead of the required four. 2. The attraction between oppositely charged ions, forming ionic bonds 3. If you could synthesize molecules that mimic these shapes, you might be able to treat diseases or conditions caused by the inability of affected individuals to synthesize such molecules.

Concept Check 2.4

1.

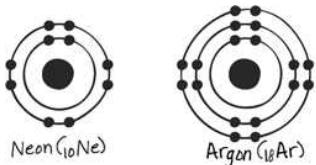


2. At equilibrium, the forward and reverse reactions occur at the same rate.
 3. $\text{C}_6\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_6 + 6 \text{O}_2 \rightarrow 6 \text{CO}_2 + 6 \text{H}_2\text{O} + \text{Energy}$. Glucose and oxygen react to form carbon dioxide and water, releasing energy. We breathe in oxygen because we need it for this reaction to occur, and we breathe out carbon dioxide because it is a by-product of this reaction. (This reaction is called cellular respiration, and you will learn more about it in Chapter 9.)

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

2.1 Iodine (part of a thyroid hormone) and iron (part of hemoglobin in blood) are both trace elements, required in minute quantities. Calcium and phosphorus (components of bones and teeth) are needed by the body in much greater quantities.

2.2



Both neon and argon have completed valence shells, containing 8 electrons. They do not have unpaired electrons that could participate in chemical bonds. 2.3 Electrons are shared equally between the two atoms in a nonpolar covalent bond. In a polar covalent bond, the electrons are drawn closer to the more electronegative atom. In the formation of ions, an electron is completely transferred from one atom to a much more electronegative atom. 2.4 The concentration of products would increase as the added reactants were converted to products. Eventually, an equilibrium would again be reached in which the forward and reverse reactions were proceeding at the same rate and the relative concentrations of reactants and products returned to where they were before the addition of more reactants.

Test Your Understanding

1. a 2. d 3. b 4. a 5. d 6. b 7. c 8. d
 9.

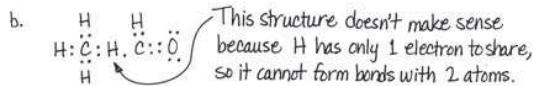
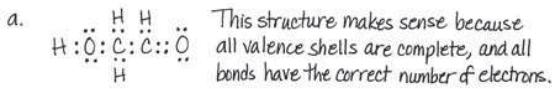
**Chapter 3****Figure Questions**

Figure 3.2 One possible answer:

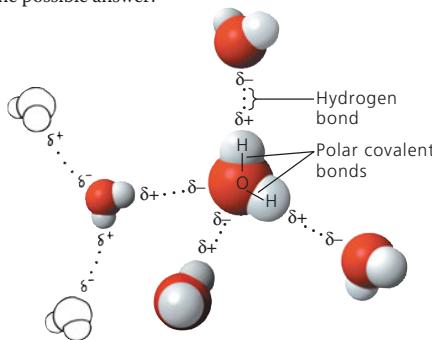


Figure 3.6 Without hydrogen bonds, water would behave like other small molecules, and the solid phase (ice) would be denser than liquid water. The ice would sink to the bottom and would no longer insulate the whole body of water, which would eventually freeze because the average annual temperature at the South Pole is -50°C . The krill could not survive. **Figure 3.7** Heating the solution would cause the water to evaporate faster than it is evaporating at room temperature. At a certain point, there wouldn't be enough water molecules to dissolve the salt ions. The salt would start coming out of solution and re-forming crystals. Eventually, all the water would evaporate, leaving behind a pile of salt like the original pile.

Concept Check 3.1

1. Electronegativity is the attraction of an atom for the electrons of a covalent bond. Because oxygen is more electronegative than hydrogen, the oxygen atom in H_2O pulls electrons toward itself, resulting in a partial negative charge on the oxygen atom and partial positive charges on the hydrogen atoms. Atoms in neighboring water molecules with opposite partial charges are attracted to each other, forming a hydrogen bond. 2. The hydrogen atoms of one molecule, with their partial positive charges, would repel the hydrogen atoms of the adjacent molecule. 3. The covalent bonds of water molecules would not be polar, and water molecules would not form hydrogen bonds with each other.

Concept Check 3.2

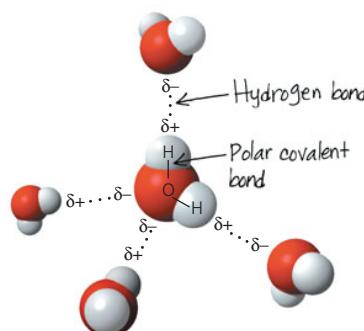
1. Hydrogen bonds hold neighboring water molecules together. This cohesion helps chains of water molecules move upward against gravity in water-conducting cells as water evaporates from the leaves. Adhesion between water molecules and the walls of the water-conducting cells also helps counter gravity. 2. High humidity hampers cooling by suppressing the evaporation of sweat. 3. As water freezes, it expands because water molecules move farther apart in forming ice crystals. When there is water in a crevice of a boulder, expansion due to freezing may crack the boulder. 4. The hydrophobic substance repels water, perhaps helping to keep the ends of the legs from becoming coated with water and breaking through the surface. If the legs were coated with a hydrophilic substance, water would be drawn up them, possibly making it more difficult for the water strider to walk on water.

Concept Check 3.3

1. 10^5 , or 100,000 2. $[\text{H}^+] = 0.01 \text{ M} = 10^{-2} \text{ M}$, so $\text{pH} = 2$. 3. $\text{CH}_3\text{COOH} \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{COO}^- + \text{H}^+$. CH_3COOH is the acid (the H^+ donor), and CH_3COO^- is the base (the H^+ acceptor). 4. The pH of the water should decrease from 7 to about 2; the pH of the acetic acid solution will decrease only a small amount, because as a weak acid, it acts as a buffer. The reaction shown for question 3 will shift to the left, with CH_3COO^- accepting the influx of H^+ and becoming CH_3COOH molecules.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

3.1



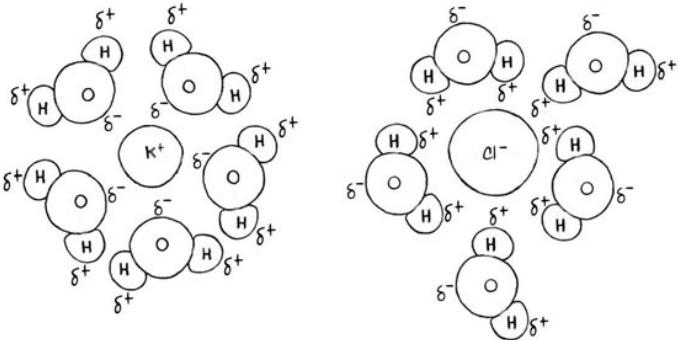
No. A covalent bond is a strong bond in which electrons are shared between two atoms. A hydrogen bond is a weak bond, which does not involve electron sharing, but is simply an attraction between two partial charges on neighboring

atoms. **3.2** Ions dissolve in water when polar water molecules form a hydration shell around them. Polar molecules dissolve as water molecules form hydrogen bonds with them and surround them. Solutions are homogeneous mixtures of solute and solvent. **3.3** CO_2 reacts with H_2O to form carbonic acid (H_2CO_3), which dissociates into H^+ and bicarbonate (HCO_3^-). Although the carbonic acid–bicarbonate reaction is a buffering system, adding CO_2 drives the reaction to the right, releasing more H^+ and lowering pH. The excess protons combine with CO_3^{2-} to form bicarbonate ions, lowering the concentration of carbonate ions available for the formation of calcium carbonate (calcification) by corals.

Test Your Understanding

1. c 2. d 3. c 4. a 5. d

6.



7. Due to intermolecular hydrogen bonds, water has a high specific heat (the amount of heat required to increase the temperature of water by 1°C). When water is heated, much of the heat is absorbed in breaking hydrogen bonds before the water molecules increase their motion and the temperature increases. Conversely, when water is cooled, many H bonds are formed, which releases a significant amount of heat. This release of heat can provide some protection against freezing of the plants' leaves, thus protecting the cells from damage.

Chapter 4

Figure Questions

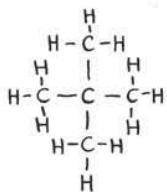
Figure 4.2 Because the concentration of the reactants influences the equilibrium (as discussed in Chapter 2), there might have been more HCN relative to CH_2O , since there would have been a higher concentration of the reactant gas containing nitrogen.

Figure 4.4



Figure 4.6 The tails of fats contain only carbon-hydrogen bonds, which are relatively nonpolar. Because the tails occupy the bulk of a fat molecule, they make the molecule as a whole nonpolar and therefore incapable of forming hydrogen bonds with water.

Figure 4.7

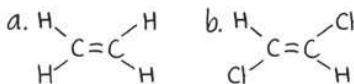


Concept Check 4.1

1. Prior to Wöhler's experiment, the prevailing view was that only living organisms could synthesize "organic" compounds. Wöhler made urea, an organic compound, without the involvement of living organisms. 2. The spark provided energy needed for the inorganic molecules in the atmosphere to react with each other. (You'll learn more about energy and chemical reactions in Chapter 8.)

Concept Check 4.2

1.

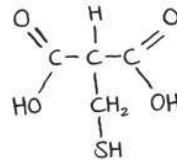


2. The forms of C_4H_{10} in (b) are structural isomers, as are the butenes in (c). 3. Both consist largely of hydrocarbon chains. 4. No. There is not enough diversity in the atoms. It can't form structural isomers because there is only one way for three carbons to attach to each other (in a line). There are no double bonds, so *cis-trans* isomers are not possible. Each carbon has at least two hydrogens attached to it, so the molecule is symmetrical and cannot have enantiomers.

Concept Check 4.3

1. It has both an amino group ($-\text{NH}_2$), which makes it an amine, and a carboxyl group ($-\text{COOH}$), which makes it a carboxylic acid. 2. The ATP molecule loses

a phosphate, becoming ADP. 3. A chemical group that can act as a base has been replaced with a group that can act as an acid, increasing the acidic properties of the molecule. The shape of the molecule would also change, likely changing the molecules with which it can interact. The original cysteine molecule has an asymmetric carbon in the center. After replacement of the amino group with a carboxyl group, this carbon is no longer asymmetric.



Summary of Key Concepts Questions

4.1 Miller showed that organic molecules could form under the physical and chemical conditions estimated to have been present on early Earth. This abiotic synthesis of organic molecules would have been a first step in the origin of life. 4.2 Acetone and propanal are structural isomers. Acetic acid and glycine have no asymmetric carbons, whereas glycerol phosphate has one. Therefore, glycerol phosphate can exist as forms that are enantiomers, but acetic acid and glycine cannot. 4.3 The methyl group is nonpolar and not reactive. The other six groups are called functional groups because they can participate in chemical reactions. Also, all except the sulphydryl group are hydrophilic, increasing the solubility of organic compounds in water.

Test Your Understanding

1. b 2. b 3. c 4. c 5. a 6. b 7. a

8. The molecule on the right; the middle carbon is asymmetric.

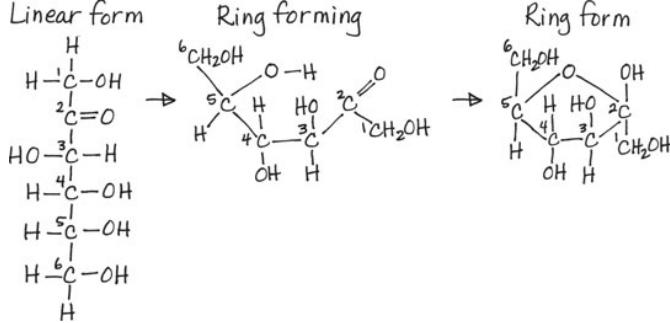
9. • Si has 4 valence electrons, the same number as carbon. Therefore, silicon would be able to form long chains, including branches, that could act as skeletons for large molecules. It would clearly do this much better than neon (with no valence electrons) or aluminum (with 3 valence electrons).

Chapter 5

Figure Questions

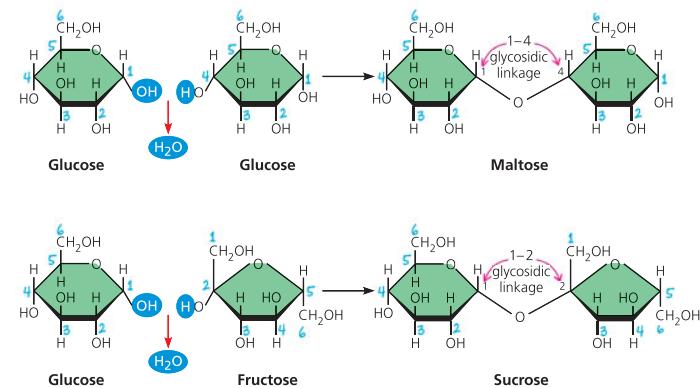
Figure 5.3 Glucose and fructose are structural isomers.

Figure 5.4



Note that the oxygen on carbon 5 lost its proton and that the oxygen on carbon 2, which used to be the carbonyl oxygen, gained a proton. Four carbons are in the fructose ring, and two are not. (The latter two carbons are attached to carbons 2 and 5, which are in the ring.) The fructose ring differs from the glucose ring, which has five carbons in the ring and one that is not. (Note that the orientation of this fructose molecule is flipped horizontally relative to that of the one in Figure 5.5b.)

Figure 5.5



(Note that fructose is oriented differently from glucose in Figure 5.5b, and from the fructose shown in the answer for Figure 5.4, above.)

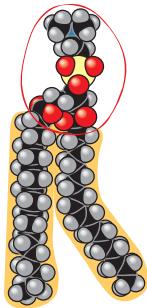
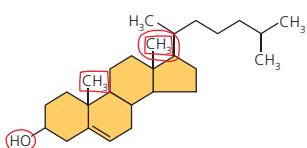
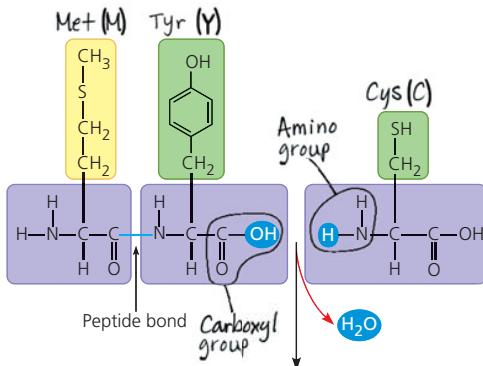
Figure 5.11**Figure 5.12****Figure 5.15**

Figure 5.19 The R group on glutamic acid is acidic and hydrophilic, whereas that on valine is nonpolar and hydrophobic. Therefore, it is unlikely that valine and glutamic acid participate in the same intramolecular interactions. A change in these interactions could (and does) cause a disruption of molecular structure.

Figure 5.22 The helical stretches are α helices; these can be seen clearly in many places in the RNA polymerase II model, such as the bottom middle, the upper right, and the lower right areas. Although β pleated sheets may be present, they are not as easy to see.

Figure 5.26 Using a genomics approach allows us to use gene sequences to identify species, and to learn about evolutionary relationships among any two species. This is because all species are related by their evolutionary history, and the evidence is in the DNA sequences. Proteomics—looking at proteins that are expressed—allows us to learn about how organisms or cells are functioning at a given time, or in an association with another species.

Concept Check 5.1

1. The four main classes are proteins, carbohydrates, lipids, and nucleic acids. Lipids are not polymers.
2. Nine, with one water molecule required to hydrolyze each connection between adjacent monomers
3. The amino acids in the fish protein must be released in hydrolysis reactions and incorporated into other proteins in dehydration reactions.

Concept Check 5.2

1. $C_3H_6O_3$
2. $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$
3. The antibiotic treatment is likely to have killed the cellulose-digesting prokaryotes in the cow's gut. The absence of these prokaryotes would hamper the cow's ability to obtain energy from food and could lead to weight loss and possibly death. Thus, prokaryotic species are reintroduced, in appropriate combinations, in the gut culture given to treated cows.

Concept Check 5.3

1. Both have a glycerol molecule attached to fatty acids. The glycerol of a fat has three fatty acids attached, whereas the glycerol of a phospholipid is attached to two fatty acids and one phosphate group.
2. Human sex hormones are steroids, a type of compound that is hydrophobic and thus classified as a lipid.
3. The oil droplet membrane could consist of a single layer of phospholipids rather than a bilayer, because an arrangement in which the hydrophobic tails of the membrane phospholipids were in contact with the hydrocarbon regions of the oil molecules would be more stable.

Concept Check 5.4

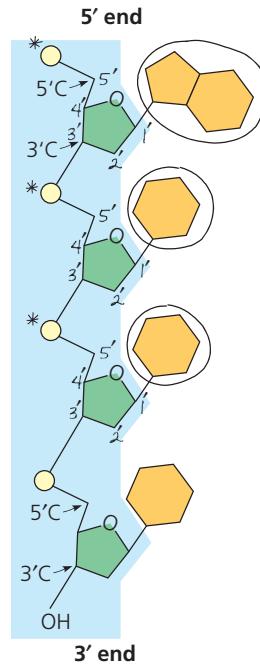
1. Secondary structure involves hydrogen bonds between atoms of the polypeptide backbone. Tertiary structure involves interactions between atoms of the

side chains of the amino acid subunits.

2. The two ring forms of glucose are called α and β , depending on how the glycosidic bond dictates the position of a hydroxyl group. Proteins have α helices and β pleated sheets, two types of repeating structures found in polypeptides due to interactions between the repeating constituents of the chain (not the side chains). The hemoglobin molecule is made up of two types of polypeptides, containing two molecules each of α -globin and β -globin.
3. These are all nonpolar, hydrophobic amino acids, so you would expect this region to be located in the interior of the folded polypeptide, where it would not contact the aqueous environment inside the cell.

Concept Check 5.5

1.



2.



Concept Check 5.6

1. The DNA of an organism encodes all of its proteins, and proteins are the molecules that carry out the work of cells, whether an organism is unicellular or multicellular. By knowing the DNA sequence of an organism, scientists would be able to catalog the protein sequences as well.
2. Ultimately, the DNA sequence carries the information necessary to make the proteins that determine the traits of a particular species. Because the traits of the two species are similar, you would expect the proteins to be similar as well, and therefore the gene sequences should also have a high degree of similarity.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

- Concept 5.1** The polymers of large carbohydrates (polysaccharides), proteins, and nucleic acids are built from three different types of monomers (monosaccharides, amino acids, and nucleotides, respectively). **Concept 5.2** Both starch and cellulose are polymers of glucose, but the glucose monomers are in the α configuration in starch and the β configuration in cellulose. The glycosidic linkages thus have different geometries, giving the polymers different shapes and thus different properties. Starch is an energy-storage compound in plants; cellulose is a structural component of plant cell walls. Humans can hydrolyze starch to provide energy but cannot hydrolyze cellulose. Cellulose aids in the passage of food through the digestive tract. **Concept 5.3** Lipids are not polymers because they do not exist as a chain of linked monomers. They are not considered macromolecules because they do not reach the giant size of many polysaccharides, proteins, and nucleic acids. **Concept 5.4** A polypeptide, which may consist of hundreds of amino acids in a specific sequence (primary structure), has regions of coils and pleats (secondary structure), which are then folded into irregular contortions (tertiary structure) and may be noncovalently associated with other polypeptides (quaternary structure). The linear order of amino acids, with the varying properties of their side chains (R groups), determines what secondary and tertiary structures will form to produce a protein. The resulting unique three-dimensional shapes of proteins are key to their specific and diverse functions. **Concept 5.5** The complementary base pairing of the two strands of DNA makes possible the precise replication of DNA every time a cell divides, ensuring that genetic information is faithfully transmitted. In some types of RNA, complementary base pairing enables RNA molecules to assume specific three-dimensional shapes that facilitate diverse

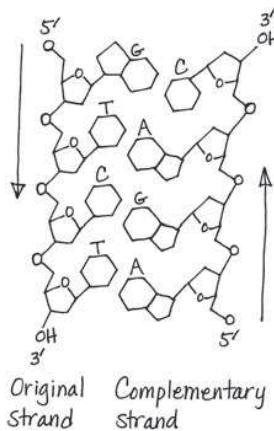
functions. **Concept 5.6** You would expect the human gene sequence to be most similar to that of the mouse (another mammal), then to that of the fish (another vertebrate), and least similar to that of the fruit fly (an invertebrate).

Test Your Understanding

1. d 2. a 3. b 4. a 5. b 6. b 7. c
8.

| | Monomers or Components | Polymer or larger molecule | Type of linkage |
|---------------|------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| Carbohydrates | Monosaccharides | Polysaccharides | Glycosidic linkages |
| Lipids | Fatty acids | Triacylglycerols | Ester linkages |
| Proteins | Amino acids | Polypeptides | Peptide bonds |
| Nucleic acids | Nucleotides | Polynucleotides | Phosphodiester linkages |

9.



Chapter 6

Figure Questions

Figure 6.6 A phospholipid is a lipid consisting of a glycerol molecule joined to two fatty acids and one phosphate group. Together, the glycerol and phosphate end of the phospholipid form the “head,” which is hydrophilic, while the hydrocarbon chains on the fatty acids form hydrophobic “tails.” The presence in a single molecule of both a hydrophilic and a hydrophobic region makes the molecule ideal as the main building block of a cell or organelle membrane, which is a phospholipid bilayer. In this bilayer, the hydrophobic regions can associate with each other on the inside of the membrane, while the hydrophilic region of each can be in contact with the aqueous solution on either side. **Figure 6.9** The DNA in a chromosome dictates synthesis of a messenger RNA (mRNA) molecule, which then moves out to the cytoplasm. There, the information is used for the production, on ribosomes, of proteins that carry out cellular functions. **Figure 6.22** Each centriole has 9 sets of 3 microtubules, so the entire centrosome (two centrioles) has 54 microtubules. Each microtubule consists of a helical array of tubulin dimers (as shown in Table 6.1).

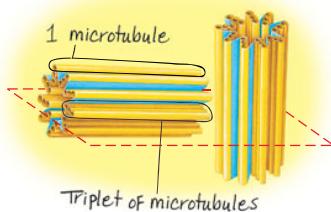
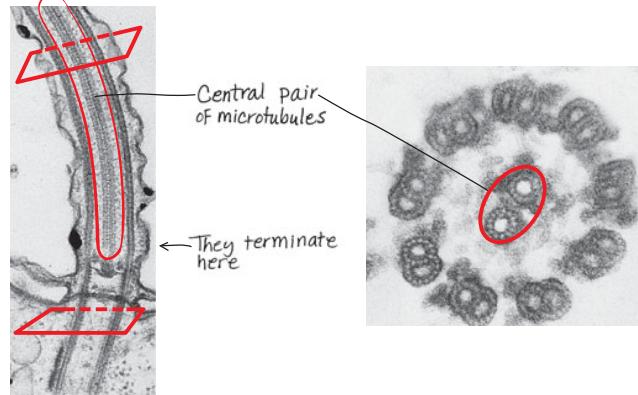


Figure 6.24



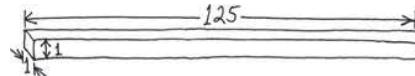
The two central microtubules terminate above the basal body, so they aren't present at the level of the cross section through the basal body, indicated by the lower red rectangle in (a).

Concept Check 6.1

1. Stains used for light microscopy are colored molecules that bind to cell components, affecting the light passing through, while stains used for electron microscopy involve heavy metals that affect the beams of electrons. **2.** (a) Light microscope, (b) scanning electron microscope

Concept Check 6.2

1. See Figure 6.8.
2.



This cell would have the same volume as the cells in columns 2 and 3 but proportionally more surface area than that in column 2 and less than that in column 3. Thus, the surface-to-volume ratio should be greater than 1.2 but less than 6. To obtain the surface area, you would add the area of the six sides (the top, bottom, sides, and ends): $125 + 125 + 125 + 125 + 1 + 1 = 502$. The surface-to-volume ratio equals 502 divided by a volume of 125, or 4.0.

Concept Check 6.3

1. Ribosomes in the cytoplasm translate the genetic message, carried from the DNA in the nucleus by mRNA, into a polypeptide chain. **2.** Nucleoli consist of DNA and the ribosomal RNA (rRNA) made according to its instructions, as well as proteins imported from the cytoplasm. Together, the rRNA and proteins are assembled into large and small ribosomal subunits. (These are exported through nuclear pores to the cytoplasm, where they will participate in polypeptide synthesis.) **3.** Each chromosome consists of one long DNA molecule attached to numerous protein molecules, a combination called chromatin. As a cell begins division, each chromosome becomes “condensed” as its diffuse mass of chromatin coils up.

Concept Check 6.4

1. The primary distinction between rough and smooth ER is the presence of bound ribosomes on the rough ER. Both types of ER make phospholipids, but membrane proteins and secretory proteins are all produced by the ribosomes on the rough ER. The smooth ER also functions in detoxification, carbohydrate metabolism, and storage of calcium ions. **2.** Transport vesicles move membranes and substances they enclose between other components of the endomembrane system. **3.** The mRNA is synthesized in the nucleus and then passes out through a nuclear pore to be translated on a bound ribosome, attached to the rough ER. The protein is synthesized into the lumen of the ER and perhaps modified there. A transport vesicle carries the protein to the Golgi apparatus. After further modification in the Golgi, another transport vesicle carries it back to the ER, where it will perform its cellular function.

Concept Check 6.5

1. Both organelles are involved in energy transformation, mitochondria in cellular respiration and chloroplasts in photosynthesis. They both have multiple membranes that separate their interiors into compartments. In both organelles, the innermost membranes— cristae, or infoldings of the inner membrane, in mitochondria, and the thylakoid membranes in chloroplasts—have large surface areas with embedded enzymes that carry out their main functions. **2.** Yes. Plant cells are eukaryotic cells that are able to generate energy from sugars, a function required in all cells. **3.** Mitochondria and chloroplasts are not derived from the ER, nor are they connected physically or via transport vesicles to organelles of the endomembrane system. Mitochondria and chloroplasts are structurally quite different from vesicles derived from the ER, which are bounded by a single membrane.

Concept Check 6.6

1. Both systems of movement involve long filaments that are moved in relation to each other by motor proteins that grip, release, and grip again adjacent polymers. **2.** Such individuals have defects in the microtubule-based movement of cilia and flagella. Thus, the sperm can't move because of malfunctioning or non-existent flagella, and the airways are compromised because cilia that line the trachea malfunction or don't exist, and so mucus cannot be cleared from the lungs.

Concept Check 6.7

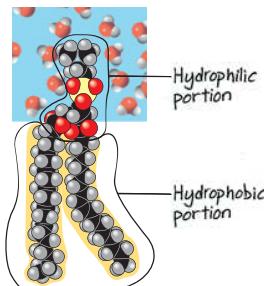
1. The most obvious difference is the presence of direct cytoplasmic connections between cells of plants (plasmodesmata) and animals (gap junctions). These connections result in the cytoplasm being continuous between adjacent cells. **2.** The cell would not be able to function properly and would probably soon die, as the cell wall or ECM must be permeable to allow the exchange of matter between the cell and its external environment. Molecules involved in energy production and use must be allowed entry, as well as those that provide information about the cell's environment. Other molecules, such as products synthesized by the cell for export and the by-products of cellular respiration, must be allowed to exit. **3.** The parts of the protein that face aqueous regions would be expected to have polar or charged (hydrophilic) amino acids, while the parts that go through the membrane would be expected to have nonpolar (hydrophobic) amino acids. You would predict polar or charged amino acids at each end (tail), in the region of the cytoplasmic loop, and in the regions of the two extracellular loops. You would predict nonpolar amino acids in the four regions that go through the membrane between the tails and loops.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

6.1 Both light and electron microscopy allow cells to be studied visually, thus helping us understand internal cellular structure and the arrangement of cell components. Cell fractionation techniques separate out different groups of cell components, which can then be analyzed biochemically to determine their function. Performing microscopy on the same cell fraction helps to correlate the biochemical function of the cell with the cell component responsible. **6.2** The separation of different functions in different organelles has several advantages. Reactants and enzymes can be concentrated in one area instead of spread throughout the cell. Reactions that require specific conditions, such as a lower pH, can be compartmentalized. And enzymes for specific reactions are often embedded in the membranes that enclose or partition an organelle. **6.3** The nucleus contains the genetic material of the cell in the form of DNA, which codes for messenger RNA, which in turn provides instructions for the synthesis of proteins (including the proteins that make up part of the ribosomes). DNA also codes for ribosomal RNA, which is combined with proteins in the nucleolus into the subunits of ribosomes. Within the cytoplasm, ribosomes join with mRNA to build polypeptides, using the genetic information in the mRNA. **6.4** Transport vesicles move proteins and membranes synthesized by the rough ER to the Golgi for further processing and then to the plasma membrane, lysosomes, or other locations in the cell, including back to the ER. **6.5** According to the endosymbiont theory, mitochondria originated from an oxygen-using prokaryotic cell that was engulfed by an ancestral eukaryotic cell. Over time, the host and endosymbiont evolved into a single organism. Chloroplasts originated when at least one of these eukaryotic cells containing mitochondria engulfed and then retained a photosynthetic prokaryote. **6.6** Inside the cell, motor proteins interact with components of the cytoskeleton to move cellular parts. Motor proteins "walk" vesicles along microtubules. The movement of cytoplasm within a cell involves interactions of the motor protein myosin and microfilaments (actin filaments). Whole cells can be moved by the rapid bending of flagella or cilia, which is caused by the motor-protein-powered sliding of microtubules within these structures. Cell movement can also occur when pseudopodia form at one end of a cell (caused by actin polymerization into a filamentous network), followed by contraction of the cell toward that end; this is powered by interactions of microfilaments with myosin. Interactions of motor proteins and microfilaments in muscle cells can cause muscle contraction that can propel whole organisms (for example, by walking or swimming). **6.7** A plant cell wall is primarily composed of microfibrils of cellulose embedded in other polysaccharides and proteins. The ECM of animal cells is primarily composed of collagen and other protein fibers, such as fibronectins and other glycoproteins. These fibers are embedded in a network of carbohydrate-rich proteoglycans. A plant cell wall provides structural support for the cell and, collectively, for the plant body. In addition to giving support, the ECM of an animal cell allows for communication of environmental changes into the cell.

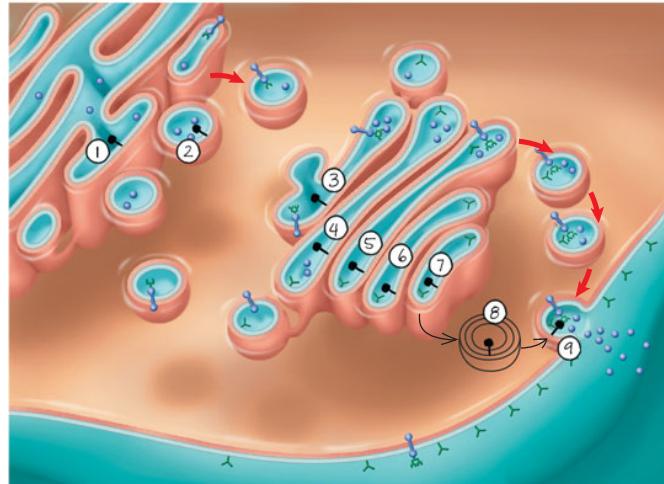
Test Your Understanding

- 1.** b **2.** c **3.** b **4.** a **5.** a **6.** c **7.** c **8.** See Figure 6.8.

Chapter 7**Figure Questions****Figure 7.2**

The hydrophilic portion is in contact with an aqueous environment (cytosol or extracellular fluid), and the hydrophobic portion is in contact with the hydrophobic portions of other phospholipids in the interior of the bilayer.

Figure 7.4 You couldn't rule out movement of proteins within membranes of the same species. You might propose that the membrane lipids and proteins from one species weren't able to mingle with those from the other species because of some incompatibility. **Figure 7.7** A transmembrane protein like the dimer in (f) might change its shape upon binding to a particular ECM molecule. The new shape might enable the interior portion of the protein to bind to a second, cytoplasmic protein that would relay the message to the inside of the cell, as shown in (c). **Figure 7.8** The shape of a protein on the HIV surface is likely to be complementary to the shape of the receptor (CD4) and also to that of the co-receptor (CCR5). A molecule that was a similar shape to the HIV surface protein could bind CCR5, blocking HIV binding. (Another answer would be a molecule that bound to CCR5 and changed the shape of CCR5 so it could no longer bind HIV.)

Figure 7.9

The protein would contact the extracellular fluid. The protein extends into the ER lumen. Once the vesicle fuses with the plasma membrane, the "inside" of the ER membrane, facing the lumen, will become the "outside" of the plasma membrane, facing the extracellular fluid. **Figure 7.11** The orange dye would be evenly distributed throughout the solution on both sides of the membrane. The solution levels would not be affected because the orange dye can diffuse through the membrane and equalize its concentration. Thus, no additional osmosis would take place in either direction. **Figure 7.16** The diamond solutes are moving into the cell (down), and the round solutes are moving out of the cell (up); both are moving against their concentration gradient.

Concept Check 7.1

1. They are on the inner side of the transport vesicle membrane. **2.** The grasses living in the cooler region would be expected to have more unsaturated fatty acids in their membranes because those fatty acids remain fluid at lower temperatures. The grasses living immediately adjacent to the hot springs would be expected to have more saturated fatty acids, which would allow the fatty acids to "stack" more closely, making the membranes less fluid and therefore helping them to stay intact at higher temperatures. (Cholesterol could not be used to moderate the effects of temperature on membrane fluidity because it is not found within plant cell membranes.)

Concept Check 7.2

1. O₂ and CO₂ are both nonpolar molecules that can easily pass through the hydrophobic interior of a membrane. **2.** Water is a polar molecule, so it cannot pass very rapidly through the hydrophobic region in the middle of a phospholipid bilayer. **3.** The hydronium ion is charged, while glycerol is not. Charge is probably more significant than size as a basis for exclusion by the aquaporin channel.

Concept Check 7.3

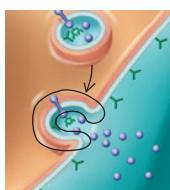
1. CO₂ is a nonpolar molecule that can diffuse through the plasma membrane. As long as it diffuses away so that the concentration remains low outside the cell, it will continue to exit the cell in this way. (This is the opposite of the case for O₂, described in this section.) **2.** The activity of *Paramecium caudatum*'s contractile vacuole will decrease. The vacuole pumps out excess water that accumulates in the cell; this accumulation occurs only in a hypotonic environment.

Concept Check 7.4

1. The pump uses ATP. To establish a voltage, ions have to be pumped against their gradients, which requires energy. **2.** Each ion is being transported against its electrochemical gradient. If either ion were transported down its electrochemical gradient, this would be considered cotransport. **3.** The internal environment of a lysosome is acidic, so it has a higher concentration of H⁺ than does the cytoplasm. Therefore, you might expect the membrane of the lysosome to have a proton pump such as that shown in Figure 7.17 to pump H⁺ into the lysosome.

Concept Check 7.5

1. Exocytosis. When a transport vesicle fuses with the plasma membrane, the vesicle membrane becomes part of the plasma membrane.
2.



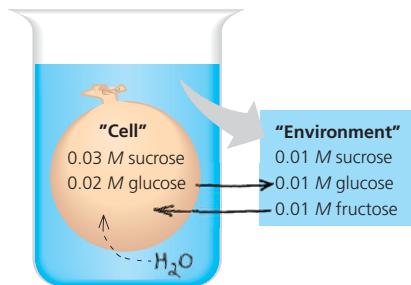
3. The glycoprotein would be synthesized in the ER lumen, move through the Golgi apparatus, and then travel in a vesicle to the plasma membrane, where it would undergo exocytosis and become part of the ECM.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

- 7.1** Plasma membranes define the cell by separating the cellular components from the external environment. This allows conditions inside cells to be controlled by membrane proteins, which regulate entry and exit of molecules and even cell function (see Figure 7.7). The processes of life can be carried out inside the controlled environment of the cell, so membranes are crucial. In eukaryotes, membranes also function to subdivide the cytoplasm into different compartments where distinct processes can occur, even under differing conditions such as pH. **7.2** Aquaporins are channel proteins that greatly increase the permeability of a membrane to water molecules, which are polar and therefore do not readily diffuse through the hydrophobic interior of the membrane. **7.3** There will be a net diffusion of water out of a cell into a hypertonic solution. The free water concentration is higher inside the cell than in the solution (where water molecules are not free, but are clustered around the higher concentration of solute particles). **7.4** One of the solutes moved by the cotransporter is actively transported against its concentration gradient. The energy for this transport comes from the concentration gradient of the other solute, which was established by an electrogenic pump that used energy to transport the other solute across the membrane. **7.5** In receptor-mediated endocytosis, specific molecules act as ligands when they bind to receptors on the plasma membrane. The cell can acquire bulk quantities of those molecules when a coated pit forms a vesicle and carries the bound molecules into the cell.

Test Your Understanding

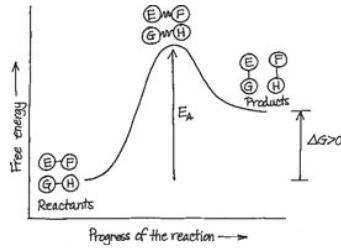
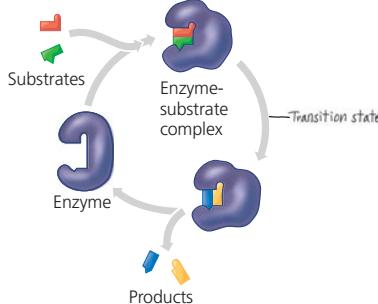
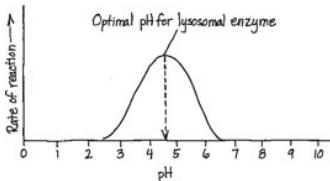
1. b 2. c 3. a 4. c 5. b
6. (a)



- (b) The solution outside is hypotonic. It has less sucrose, which is a nonpenetrating solute. (c) See answer for (a). (d) The artificial cell will become more turgid. (e) Eventually, the two solutions will have the same solute concentrations. Even though sucrose can't move through the membrane, water flow (osmosis) will lead to isotonic conditions.

Chapter 8**Figure Questions**

- Figure 8.5** With a proton pump (Figure 7.17), the energy stored in ATP is used to pump protons across the membrane and build up a higher (nonrandom) concentration outside of the cell, so this process results in higher free energy. When solute molecules (analogous to H^+ ions) are uniformly distributed, similar to the random distribution in the bottom of (b), the system has less free energy than it does in the top of (b). The system in the bottom can do no work. Because the concentration gradient created by a proton pump (Figure 7.17) represents higher free energy, this system has the potential to do work (as you will see in Chapter 9). **Figure 8.10** Glutamic acid has a carboxyl group at the end of its R group. Glutamine has exactly the same structure as glutamic acid, except that there is an amino group in place of the $-OH$ on the R group. (The O atom on the R group leaves during the synthesis reaction.)

Figure 8.13**Figure 8.16****Figure 8.17****Concept Check 8.1**

- 1.** The second law is the trend toward randomization, or increasing entropy. When the concentrations of a substance on both sides of a membrane are equal, the distribution is more random than when they are unequal. Diffusion of a substance to a region where it is initially less concentrated increases entropy, making it an energetically favorable (spontaneous) process as described by the second law. This explains the process seen in Figure 7.10. **2.** The apple has potential energy in its position hanging on the tree, and the sugars and other nutrients it contains have chemical energy. The apple has kinetic energy as it falls from the tree to the ground. Finally, when the apple is digested and its molecules broken down, some of the chemical energy is used to do work, and the rest is lost as thermal energy. **3.** The sugar crystals become less ordered (entropy increases) as they dissolve and become randomly spread out in the water. Over time, the water evaporates, and the crystals form again because the water volume is insufficient to keep them in solution. While the reappearance of sugar crystals may represent a "spontaneous" increase in order (decrease in entropy), it is balanced by the decrease in order (increase in entropy) of the water molecules, which changed from a relatively compact arrangement as liquid water to a much more dispersed and disordered form as water vapor.

Concept Check 8.2

- 1.** Cellular respiration is a spontaneous and exergonic process. The energy released from glucose is used to do work in the cell or is lost as heat. **2.** Catabolism breaks down organic molecules, releasing their chemical energy and resulting in smaller products with more entropy, as when moving from the top to the bottom of part (c). Anabolism consumes energy to synthesize larger molecules from simpler ones, as when moving from the bottom to the top of part (c). **3.** The reaction is exergonic because it releases energy—in this case, in the form of light. (This is a nonbiological version of the bioluminescence seen in Figure 8.1.)

Concept Check 8.3

- 1.** ATP usually transfers energy to endergonic processes by phosphorylating (adding phosphate groups to) other molecules. (Exergonic processes phosphorylate ADP to regenerate ATP.) **2.** A set of coupled reactions can transform the first combination into the second. Since this is an exergonic process overall, ΔG is negative and the first combination must have more free energy (see Figure 8.10). **3.** Active transport: The solute is being transported against its concentration gradient, which requires energy, provided by ATP hydrolysis.

Concept Check 8.4

- 1.** A spontaneous reaction is a reaction that is exergonic. However, if it has a high activation energy that is rarely attained, the rate of the reaction may be low. **2.** Only the specific substrate(s) will fit properly into the active site of an enzyme,

the part of the enzyme that carries out catalysis. **3.** In the presence of malonate, increase the concentration of the normal substrate (succinate) and see whether the rate of reaction increases. If it does, malonate is a competitive inhibitor. **4.** If lactose weren't present in the environment as a source of food and the fucose-containing disaccharide were available, bacteria that could digest the latter would be better able to grow and multiply than those that could not.

Concept Check 8.5

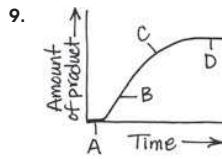
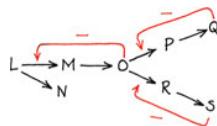
1. The activator binds in such a way that it stabilizes the active form of an enzyme, whereas the inhibitor stabilizes the inactive form. **2.** A catabolic pathway breaks down organic molecules, generating energy that is stored in ATP molecules. In feedback inhibition of such a pathway, ATP (one product) would act as an allosteric inhibitor of an enzyme catalyzing an early step in the catabolic process. When ATP is plentiful, the pathway would be turned off and no more would be made.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

8.1 The process of “ordering” a cell's structure is accompanied by an increase in the entropy or disorder of the universe. For example, an animal cell takes in highly ordered organic molecules as the source of matter and energy used to build and maintain its structures. In the same process, however, the cell releases heat and the simple molecules of carbon dioxide and water to the surroundings. The increase in entropy of the latter process offsets the entropy decrease in the former. **8.2** A spontaneous reaction has a negative ΔG and is exergonic. For a chemical reaction to proceed with net release of free energy ($-\Delta G$), the enthalpy or total energy of the system must decrease ($-\Delta H$), and/or the entropy or disorder must increase (yielding a more negative term, $-T\Delta S$). Spontaneous reactions supply the energy to perform cellular work. **8.3** The free energy released from the hydrolysis of ATP may drive endergonic reactions through the transfer of a phosphate group to a reactant molecule, forming a more reactive phosphorylated intermediate. ATP hydrolysis also powers the mechanical and transport work of a cell, often by powering shape changes in the relevant motor proteins. Cellular respiration, the catabolic breakdown of glucose, provides the energy for the endergonic regeneration of ATP from ADP and Pi . **8.4** Activation energy barriers prevent the complex molecules of the cell, which are rich in free energy, from spontaneously breaking down to less ordered, more stable molecules. Enzymes permit a regulated metabolism by binding to specific substrates and forming enzyme-substrate complexes that selectively lower the E_a for the chemical reactions in a cell. **8.5** A cell tightly regulates its metabolic pathways in response to fluctuating needs for energy and materials. The binding of activators or inhibitors to regulatory sites on allosteric enzymes stabilizes either the active or inactive form of the subunits. For example, the binding of ATP to a catabolic enzyme in a cell with excess ATP would inhibit that pathway. Such types of feedback inhibition preserve chemical resources within a cell. If ATP supplies are depleted, binding of ADP to the regulatory site of catabolic enzymes would activate that pathway, generating more ATP.

Test Your Understanding

1. b 2. c 3. b 4. a 5. c 6. d 7. c



9.
 A. The substrate molecules are entering the cells, so no product is made yet.
 B. There is sufficient substrate, so the reaction is proceeding at a maximum rate.
 C. As the substrate is used up, the rate decreases (the slope is less steep).
 D. The line is flat because no new substrate remains and thus no new product appears.

Chapter 9

Figure Questions

Figure 9.4 The reduced form has an extra hydrogen, along with 2 electrons, bound to the carbon shown at the top of the nicotinamide (opposite the N). There are different numbers and positions of double bonds in the two forms: The oxidized form has three double bonds in the ring, while the reduced form has only two. (In organic chemistry you may have learned, or will learn, that three double bonds in a ring are able to “resonate,” or act as a ring of electrons.) In the oxidized form there is a + charge on the N (because it is sharing 4 electron pairs), whereas in the reduced form it is only sharing 3 electron pairs (having a pair of electrons to itself). **Figure 9.7** Because there is no external source of energy for the reaction, it must be exergonic, and the reactants must be at a higher energy level than the products. **Figure 9.9** The removal would probably stop glycolysis, or at least slow it down, since it would push the equilibrium for step 5 toward the bottom (toward DHAP). If less (or no) glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate were available, step 6 would slow down (or be unable to occur). **Figure 9.15** At first, some ATP could be made, since electron transport could proceed as far as complex III, and a small H^+ gradient could be built up. Soon, however, no more electrons could be passed to complex III because it could not be reoxidized by passing its electrons to complex IV. **Figure 9.16** First, there are 2 NADH from the oxidation of pyruvate plus 6 NADH from the citric acid cycle (CAC); $8 \text{ NADH} \times 2.5 \text{ ATP/NADH} = 20 \text{ ATP}$. Second, there are 2 FADH₂ from the CAC; $2 \text{ FADH}_2 \times 1.5 \text{ ATP/FADH}_2 = 3 \text{ ATP}$. Third, the 2 NADH from glycolysis enter the mitochondrion through one of two

types of shuttle. They pass their electrons either to 2 FAD, which become FADH₂ and result in 3 ATP, or to 2 NAD⁺, which become NADH and result in 5 ATP. Thus, $20 + 3 + 3 = 26 \text{ ATP}$, or $20 + 3 + 5 = 28 \text{ ATP}$ from all NADH and FADH₂.

Concept Check 9.1

1. Both processes include glycolysis, the citric acid cycle, and oxidative phosphorylation. In aerobic respiration, the final electron acceptor is molecular oxygen (O_2); in anaerobic respiration, the final electron acceptor is a different substance. **2.** $C_6H_{12}O_6$ would be oxidized and NAD⁺ would be reduced.

Concept Check 9.2

1. NAD⁺ acts as the oxidizing agent in step 6, accepting electrons from glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate, which thus acts as the reducing agent.

Concept Check 9.3

1. NADH and FADH₂; they will donate electrons to the electron transport chain. **2.** CO_2 is released from the pyruvate that is the end product of glycolysis, and CO_2 is also released during the citric acid cycle. **3.** In both cases, the precursor molecule loses a CO_2 molecule and then donates electrons to an electron carrier in an oxidation step. Also, the product has been activated due to the attachment of a CoA group.

Concept Check 9.4

1. Oxidative phosphorylation would eventually stop entirely, resulting in no ATP production by this process. Without oxygen to “pull” electrons down the electron transport chain, H^+ would not be pumped into the mitochondrion's intermembrane space and chemiosmosis would not occur. **2.** Decreasing the pH means addition of H^+ . This would establish a proton gradient even without the function of the electron transport chain, and we would expect ATP synthase to function and synthesize ATP. (In fact, it was experiments like this that provided support for chemiosmosis as an energy-coupling mechanism.) **3.** One of the components of the electron transport chain, ubiquinone (Q), must be able to diffuse within the membrane. It could not do so if the membrane were locked rigidly into place.

Concept Check 9.5

1. A derivative of pyruvate, such as acetaldehyde during alcohol fermentation, or pyruvate itself during lactic acid fermentation; oxygen **2.** The cell would need to consume glucose at a rate about 16 times the consumption rate in the aerobic environment (2 ATP are generated by fermentation versus up to 32 ATP by cellular respiration).

Concept Check 9.6

1. The fat is much more reduced; it has many $—CH_2—$ units, and in all these bonds the electrons are equally shared. The electrons present in a carbohydrate molecule are already somewhat oxidized (shared unequally in bonds), as quite a few of them are bound to oxygen. Electrons that are equally shared, as in fat, have a higher energy level than electrons that are unequally shared, as in carbohydrates. Thus, fat is a much better fuel than carbohydrate. **2.** When we consume more food than necessary for metabolic processes, our body synthesizes fat as a way of storing energy for later use. **3.** AMP will accumulate, stimulating phosphofructokinase, and thus increasing the rate of glycolysis. Since oxygen is not present, the cell will convert pyruvate to lactate in lactic acid fermentation, providing a supply of ATP. **4.** When oxygen is present, the fatty acid chains containing most of the energy of a fat are oxidized and fed into the citric acid cycle and the electron transport chain. During intense exercise, however, oxygen is scarce in muscle cells, so ATP must be generated by glycolysis alone. A very small part of the fat molecule, the glycerol backbone, can be oxidized via glycolysis, but the amount of energy released by this portion is insignificant compared to that released by the fatty acid chains. (This is why moderate exercise, staying below 70% maximum heart rate, is better for burning fat—because enough oxygen remains available to the muscles.)

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

9.1 Most of the ATP produced in cellular respiration comes from oxidative phosphorylation, in which the energy released from redox reactions in an electron transport chain is used to produce ATP. In substrate-level phosphorylation, an enzyme directly transfers a phosphate group to ADP from an intermediate substrate. All ATP production in glycolysis occurs by substrate-level phosphorylation; this form of ATP production also occurs at one step in the citric acid cycle.

9.2 The oxidation of the three-carbon sugar, glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate, yields energy. In this oxidation, electrons and H^+ are transferred to NAD⁺, forming NADH, and a phosphate group is attached to the oxidized substrate. ATP is then formed by substrate-level phosphorylation when this phosphate group is transferred to ADP. **9.3** The release of six molecules of CO_2 represents the complete oxidation of glucose. During the processing of two pyruvates to acetyl CoA, the fully oxidized carboxyl groups ($—COO^-$) are given off as $2 CO_2$. The remaining four carbons are released as CO_2 in the citric acid cycle as citrate is oxidized back to oxaloacetate. **9.4** The flow of H^+ through the ATP synthase complex causes the rotor and attached rod to rotate, exposing catalytic sites in the knob portion that produce ATP from ADP and Pi . ATP synthases are found in the inner mitochondrial membrane, the plasma membrane of prokaryotes, and membranes within chloroplasts. **9.5** Anaerobic respiration yields more ATP. The 2 ATP produced by substrate-level phosphorylation in glycolysis represent the total energy yield of fermentation. NADH passes its “high-energy” electrons to pyruvate or a derivative of pyruvate, recycling NAD⁺ and allowing glycolysis to continue. In anaerobic respiration, the NADH produced during glycolysis, as well as additional molecules of NADH produced as pyruvate is oxidized, are used to generate ATP molecules. An electron transport chain captures the energy of the electrons in NADH via a series of redox reactions; ultimately, the electrons are transferred

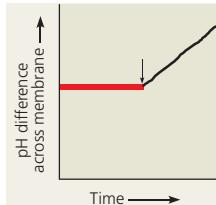
to an electronegative molecule other than oxygen. **9.6** The ATP produced by catabolic pathways is used to drive anabolic pathways. Also, many of the intermediates of glycolysis and the citric acid cycle are used in the biosynthesis of a cell's molecules.

Test Your Understanding

1. c 2. c 3. a 4. b 5. d 6. a 7. b

8. Since the overall process of glycolysis results in net production of ATP, it would make sense for the process to slow down when ATP levels have increased substantially. Thus, we would expect ATP to allosterically inhibit phosphofructokinase. **9.** The proton pump in Figure 7.17 is carrying out active transport, using ATP hydrolysis to pump protons against their concentration gradient. Because ATP is required, this is active transport of protons. The ATP synthase in Figure 9.14 is using the flow of protons down their concentration gradient to power ATP synthesis. Because the protons are moving down their concentration gradient, no energy is required, and this is passive transport.

11.



H^+ would continue to be pumped across the membrane into the intermembrane space, increasing the difference between the matrix pH and the intermembrane space pH. H^+ would not be able to flow back through ATP synthase, since the enzyme is inhibited by the poison, so rather than maintaining a constant difference across the membrane, the difference would continue to increase. (Ultimately, the H^+ concentration in the intermembrane space would be so high that no more H^+ would be able to be pumped against the gradient, but this isn't shown in the graph.)

Chapter 10

Figure Questions

Figure 10.3 Situating containers of algae near sources of CO_2 emissions makes sense because algae need CO_2 to carry out photosynthesis. The higher their rate of photosynthesis, the more plant oil they will produce. At the same time, algae would be absorbing the CO_2 emitted from industrial plants or from car engines, reducing the amount of CO_2 entering the atmosphere. **Figure 10.12** In the leaf, most of the chlorophyll electrons excited by photon absorption are used to power the reactions of photosynthesis. **Figure 10.16** The person at the top of the photosystem I tower would not turn to his left and throw his electron into the bucket. Instead, he would throw it onto the top of the ramp at his right, next to the photosystem II tower. The electron would then roll down the ramp, get energized by a photon, and return to him. This cycle would continue as long as light was available. (This is why it's called cyclic electron flow.) **Figure 10.22** Yes, plants can break down the sugar (in the form of glucose) by cellular respiration, producing ATPs for various cellular processes such as endergonic chemical reactions, transport of substances across membranes, and movement of molecules in the cell. ATPs are also used for the movement of chloroplasts during cellular streaming in some plant cells (see Figure 6.26). **Figure 10.23** The gene encoding hexokinase is part of the DNA of a chromosome in the nucleus. There, the gene is transcribed into mRNA, which is transported to the cytoplasm where it is translated on a free ribosome into a polypeptide. The polypeptide folds into a functional protein with secondary and tertiary structure. Once functional, it carries out the first reaction of glycolysis in the cytoplasm.

Concept Check 10.1

1. CO_2 enters the leaves via stomata, and water enters via roots and is carried to the leaves through veins. **2.** Using ^{18}O , a heavy isotope of oxygen, as a label, researchers were able to confirm van Niel's hypothesis that the oxygen produced during photosynthesis comes from water, not from carbon dioxide. **3.** The light reactions could not keep producing NADPH and ATP without the $NADP^+$, ADP, and P_i that the Calvin cycle generates. The two cycles are interdependent.

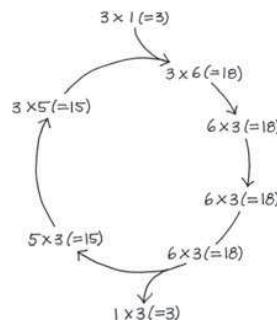
Concept Check 10.2

1. Green, because green light is mostly transmitted and reflected—not absorbed—by photosynthetic pigments. **2.** Water (H_2O) is the initial electron donor; NADP⁺ accepts electrons at the end of the electron transport chain, becoming reduced to NADPH. **3.** In this experiment, the rate of ATP synthesis would slow and eventually stop. Because the added compound would not allow a proton gradient to build up across the membrane, ATP synthase could not catalyze ATP production.

Concept Check 10.3

1. 6, 18, 12 2. The more potential energy a molecule stores, the more energy and reducing power are required for the formation of that molecule. Glucose is a valuable energy source because it is highly reduced, storing lots of potential energy in its electrons. To reduce CO_2 to glucose, much energy and reducing power are required in the form of large numbers of ATP and NADPH molecules, respectively. **3.** The light reactions require ADP and $NADP^+$, which would not be formed in sufficient quantities from ATP and NADPH if the Calvin cycle stopped.

4.



Three carbon atoms enter the cycle, one by one, as individual CO_2 molecules, and leave the cycle in one three-carbon molecule (G3P) per three turns of the cycle.

5. In glycolysis, G3P acts as an intermediate. The 6-carbon sugar fructose 1,6-bisphosphate is cleaved into two 3-carbon sugars, one of which is G3P. The other is an isomer called dihydroxyacetone phosphate (DHAP), which can be converted to G3P by an isomerase. Because G3P is the substrate for the next enzyme, it is constantly removed, and the reaction equilibrium is pulled in the direction of conversion of DHAP to more G3P. In the Calvin cycle, G3P acts as both an intermediate and a product. For every three CO_2 molecules that enter the cycle, six G3P molecules are formed, five of which must remain in the cycle and become rearranged to regenerate three 5-carbon RuBP molecules. The one remaining G3P is a product, which can be thought of as the result of "reducing" the three CO_2 molecules that entered the cycle into a 3-carbon sugar that can later be used to generate energy.

Concept Check 10.4

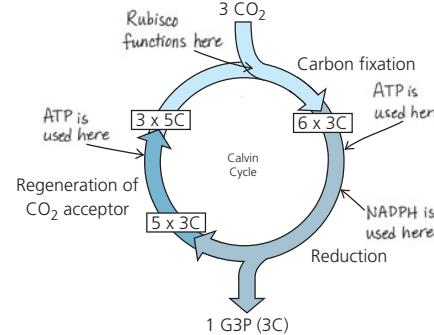
1. Photorespiration decreases photosynthetic output by adding oxygen, instead of carbon dioxide, to the Calvin cycle. As a result, no sugar is generated (no carbon is fixed), and O_2 is used rather than generated. **2.** Without PS II, no O_2 is generated in bundle-sheath cells. This avoids the problem of O_2 competing with CO_2 for binding to rubisco in these cells. **3.** Both problems are caused by a drastic change in Earth's atmosphere due to burning of fossil fuels. The increase in CO_2 concentration affects ocean chemistry by decreasing pH, thus affecting calcification by marine organisms. On land, CO_2 concentration and air temperature are conditions that plants have become adapted to, and changes in these characteristics have a strong effect on photosynthesis by plants. Thus, alteration of these two fundamental factors could have critical effects on organisms all around the planet, in all different habitats. **4.** C₄ and CAM species would replace many of the C₃ species.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

10.1 CO_2 and H_2O are the products of respiration; they are the reactants in photosynthesis. In respiration, glucose is oxidized to CO_2 and electrons are passed through an electron transfer chain from glucose to O_2 , producing H_2O . In photosynthesis, H_2O is the source of electrons, which are energized by light, temporarily stored in NADPH, and used to reduce CO_2 to carbohydrate.

10.2 The action spectrum of photosynthesis shows that some wavelengths of light that are not absorbed by chlorophyll *a* are still effective at promoting photosynthesis. The light-harvesting complexes of photosystems contain accessory pigments such as chlorophyll *b* and carotenoids, which absorb different wavelengths and pass the energy to chlorophyll *a*, broadening the spectrum of light usable for photosynthesis.

10.3

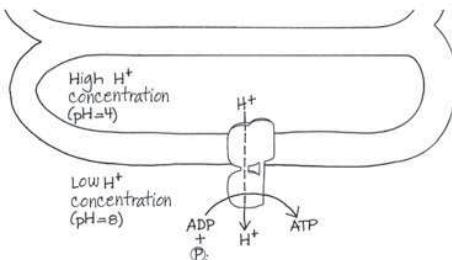


In the reduction phase of the Calvin cycle, ATP phosphorylates a three-carbon compound, and NADPH then reduces this compound to G3P. ATP is also used in the regeneration phase, when five molecules of G3P are converted to three molecules of the five-carbon compound RuBP. Rubisco catalyzes the first step of carbon fixation—the addition of CO_2 to RuBP. **10.4** Both C₄ photosynthesis and CAM photosynthesis involve initial fixation of CO_2 to produce a four-carbon compound (in mesophyll cells in C₄ plants and at night in CAM plants). These compounds are then broken down to release CO_2 (in the bundle-sheath cells in C₄ plants and during the day in CAM plants). ATP is required for recycling the

molecule that is used initially to combine with CO₂. These pathways avoid the photorespiration that consumes ATP and reduces the photosynthetic output of C₃ plants when they close stomata on hot, dry, bright days. Thus, hot, arid climates would favor C₄ and CAM plants.

Test Your Understanding

1. d 2. b 3. c 4. a 5. c 6. b 7. c
10.



The ATP would end up outside the thylakoid. The thylakoids were able to make ATP in the dark because the researchers set up an artificial proton concentration gradient across the thylakoid membrane; thus, the light reactions were not necessary to establish the H⁺ gradient required for ATP synthesis by ATP synthase.

Chapter 11

Figure Questions

Figure 11.6 Epinephrine is a signaling molecule; presumably, it binds to a cell-surface receptor protein. **Figure 11.8** This is an example of passive transport. The ion is moving down its concentration gradient, and no energy is required. **Figure 11.9** The aldosterone molecule is hydrophobic and can therefore pass directly through the lipid bilayer of the plasma membrane into the cell. (Hydrophilic molecules cannot do this.) **Figure 11.10** The entire phosphorylation cascade wouldn't operate. Regardless of whether or not the signaling molecule was bound, protein kinase 3 would always be inactive and would not be able to activate the purple-colored protein leading to the cellular response. **Figure 11.11** The signaling molecule (cAMP) would remain in its active form and would continue to signal. **Figure 11.16** 100,000,000 (one hundred million or 10⁸) glucose molecules are released. The first step results in 100× amplification (one epinephrine activates 100 G proteins); the next step does not amplify the response; the next step is a 100× amplification (10² active adenylyl cyclase molecules to 10⁴ cyclic AMPs); the next step does not amplify; the next two steps are each 10× amplifications, and the final step is a 100× amplification. **Figure 11.17** The signaling pathway shown in Figure 11.14 leads to the splitting of PIP₂ into the second messengers DAG and IP₃, which produce different responses. (The response elicited by DAG is mentioned but not shown.) The pathway shown for cell B is similar in that it branches and leads to two responses.

Concept Check 11.1

1. The two cells of opposite mating type (*a* and *α*) each secrete a certain signaling molecule, which can only be bound by receptors carried on cells of the opposite mating type. Thus, the *a* mating factor cannot bind to another *a* cell and cause it to grow toward the first *a* cell. Only an *α* cell can “receive” the signaling molecule and respond by directed growth (see the Scientific Skills Exercise).
2. Glycogen phosphorylase acts in the third stage, the response to epinephrine signaling.
3. Glucose 1-phosphate is not generated, because the activation of the enzyme requires an intact cell, with an intact receptor in the membrane and an intact signal transduction pathway. The enzyme cannot be activated directly by interaction with the signaling molecule in the test tube.

Concept Check 11.2

1. NGF is water-soluble (hydrophilic), so it cannot pass through the lipid membrane to reach intracellular receptors, as steroid hormones can. Therefore, you'd expect the NGF receptor to be in the plasma membrane—which is, in fact, the case.
2. The cell with the faulty receptor would not be able to respond appropriately to the signaling molecule when it was present. This would most likely have dire consequences for the cell, since regulation of the cell's activities by this receptor would not occur appropriately.
3. Binding of a ligand to a receptor changes the shape of the receptor, altering the ability of the receptor to transmit a signal. Binding of an allosteric regulator to an enzyme changes the shape of the enzyme, either promoting or inhibiting enzyme activity.
4. When the receptor is actively transmitting a signal to the inside of the cell, it is bound to a G protein. To determine a structure corresponding to that state, it might be useful to crystallize the receptor in the presence of many copies of the G protein. (In fact, a research group used this approach successfully with a G protein-coupled receptor related to the one shown in Figure 11.8.)

Concept Check 11.3

1. A protein kinase is an enzyme that transfers a phosphate group from ATP to a protein, usually activating that protein (often a second type of protein kinase). Many signal transduction pathways include a series of such interactions, in which each phosphorylated protein kinase in turn phosphorylates the next protein kinase in the series. Such phosphorylation cascades carry a signal from outside the cell to

the cellular protein(s) that will carry out the response.

2. Protein phosphatases reverse the effects of the kinases, and unless the signaling molecule is at a high enough concentration that it is continuously rebinding the receptor, the kinase molecules will all be returned to their inactive states by phosphatases.
3. The signal that is being transduced is the *information* that a signaling molecule is bound to the cell-surface receptor. Information is transduced by way of sequential protein-protein interactions that change protein shapes, causing them to function in a way that passes the signal (the information) along.
4. The IP₃-gated channel opens, allowing calcium ions to flow out of the ER and into the cytoplasm, which raises the cytosolic Ca²⁺ concentration.

Concept Check 11.4

1. At each step in a cascade of sequential activations, one molecule or ion may activate numerous molecules functioning in the next step. This causes the response to be amplified at each such step and overall results in a large amplification of the original signal.
2. Scaffolding proteins hold molecular components of signaling pathways in a complex with each other. Different scaffolding proteins would assemble different collections of proteins, leading to different cellular responses in the two cells.
3. A malfunctioning protein phosphatase would not be able to dephosphorylate a particular receptor or relay protein. As a result, the signaling pathway, once activated, would not be able to be terminated. (In fact, one study found altered protein phosphatases in cells from 25% of colorectal tumors.)

Concept Check 11.5

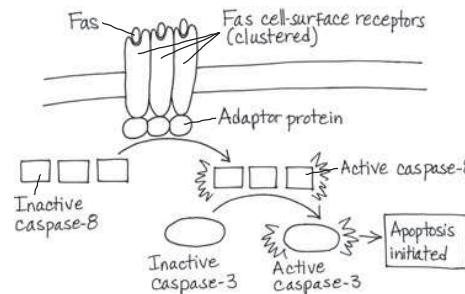
1. In formation of the hand or paw in mammals, cells in the regions between the digits are programmed to undergo apoptosis. This serves to shape the digits of the hand or paw so that they are not webbed. (A lack of apoptosis in these regions in water birds results in webbed feet.)
2. If a receptor protein for a death-signaling molecule were defective such that it was activated even in the absence of the death signal, this would lead to apoptosis when it wouldn't normally occur. Similar defects in any of the proteins in the signaling pathway would have the same effect if the defective proteins activated relay or response proteins in the absence of interaction with the previous protein or second messenger in the pathway. Conversely, if any protein in the pathway were defective in its ability to respond to an interaction with an early protein or other molecule or ion, apoptosis would not occur when it normally should. For example, a receptor protein for a death-signaling ligand might not be able to be activated, even when ligand was bound. This would stop the signal from being transduced into the cell.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

- 1.1 A cell is able to respond to a hormone only if it has a receptor protein on the cell surface or inside the cell that can bind to the hormone. The response to a hormone depends on the specific signal transduction pathway within the cell, which will lead to the specific cellular response. The response can vary for different types of cells.
- 1.2 Both GPCRs and RTKs have an extracellular binding site for a signaling molecule (ligand) and one or more α helical regions of the polypeptide that spans the membrane. A GPCR functions singly, while RTKs tend to dimerize or form larger groups of RTKs. GPCRs usually trigger a single transduction pathway, whereas the multiple activated tyrosines on an RTK dimer may trigger several different transduction pathways at the same time.
- 1.3 A protein kinase is an enzyme that adds a phosphate group to another protein. Protein kinases are often part of a phosphorylation cascade that transduces a signal. A second messenger is a small, nonprotein molecule or ion that rapidly diffuses and relays a signal throughout a cell. Both protein kinases and second messengers can operate in the same pathway. For example, the second messenger cAMP often activates protein kinase A, which then phosphorylates other proteins.
- 1.4 In G protein-coupled pathways, the GTPase portion of a G protein converts GTP to GDP and inactivates the G protein. Protein phosphatases remove phosphate groups from activated proteins, thus stopping a phosphorylation cascade of protein kinases. Phosphodiesterase converts cAMP to AMP, thus reducing the effect of cAMP in a signal transduction pathway.
- 1.5 The basic mechanism of controlled cell suicide evolved early in eukaryotic evolution, and the genetic basis for these pathways has been conserved during animal evolution. Such a mechanism is essential to the development and maintenance of all animals.

Test Your Understanding

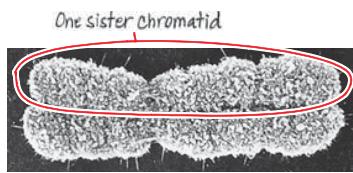
1. d 2. a 3. b 4. a 5. c 6. c 7. c
8. This is one possible drawing of the pathway. (Similar drawings would also be correct.)



Chapter 12

Figure Questions

Figure 12.4



Circling the other chromatid instead would also be correct. **Figure 12.5** The chromosome has four arms. **Figure 12.7** 12; 2; 1

Figure 12.8

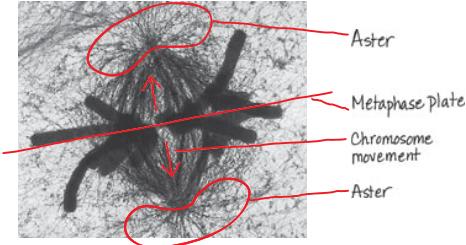


Figure 12.9 The mark would have moved toward the nearer pole. The lengths of fluorescent microtubules between that pole and the mark would have decreased, while the lengths between the chromosomes and the mark would have remained the same. **Figure 12.14** In both cases, the G_1 nucleus would have remained in G_1 until the time it normally would have entered the S phase. Chromosome condensation and spindle formation would not have occurred until the S and G_2 phases had been completed. **Figure 12.16** Passing the G_2 checkpoint in the diagram corresponds to the beginning of the "Time" axis of the graph, and entry into the mitotic phase (yellow background on the diagram) corresponds to the peaks of MPF activity and cyclin concentration on the graph (see the yellow M banner over the peaks). During G_1 and S phase in the diagram, Cdk is present without cyclin, so on the graph both cyclin concentration and MPF activity are low. The curved purple arrow in the diagram shows increasing cyclin concentration, seen on the graph during the end of S phase and throughout G_2 phase. Then the cell cycle begins again. **Figure 12.17** The cell would divide under conditions where it was inappropriate to do so. If the daughter cells and their descendants also ignored either of the checkpoints and divided, there would soon be an abnormal mass of cells. (This type of inappropriate cell division can contribute to the development of cancer.) **Figure 12.18** The cells in the vessel with PDGF would not be able to respond to the growth factor signal and thus would not divide. The culture would resemble that without the added PDGF.

Concept Check 12.1

1. 1; 2 2. 39; 39; 78

Concept Check 12.2

1. 6 chromosomes, duplicated; 12 chromatids 2. Following mitosis, cytokinesis results in two genetically identical daughter cells in both plant cells and animal cells. However, the mechanism of dividing the cytoplasm is different in animals and plants. In an animal cell, cytokinesis occurs by cleavage, which divides the parent cell in two with a contractile ring of actin filaments. In a plant cell, a cell plate forms in the middle of the cell and grows until its membrane fuses with the plasma membrane of the parent cell. A new cell wall grows inside the cell plate. 3. From the end of S phase in interphase through the end of metaphase in mitosis 4. During eukaryotic cell division, tubulin is involved in spindle formation and chromosome movement, while actin functions during cytokinesis. In bacterial binary fission, it's the opposite: Tubulin-like molecules are thought to act in daughter cell separation, and actin-like molecules are thought to move the daughter bacterial chromosomes to opposite ends of the cell. 5. A kinetochore connects the spindle (a motor; note that it has motor proteins) to a chromosome (the cargo it will move). 6. Microtubules made up of tubulin in the cell provide "rails" along which vesicles and other organelles can travel, based on interactions of motor proteins with tubulin in the microtubules. In muscle cells, actin in microfilaments interacts with myosin filaments to cause muscle contraction.

Concept Check 12.3

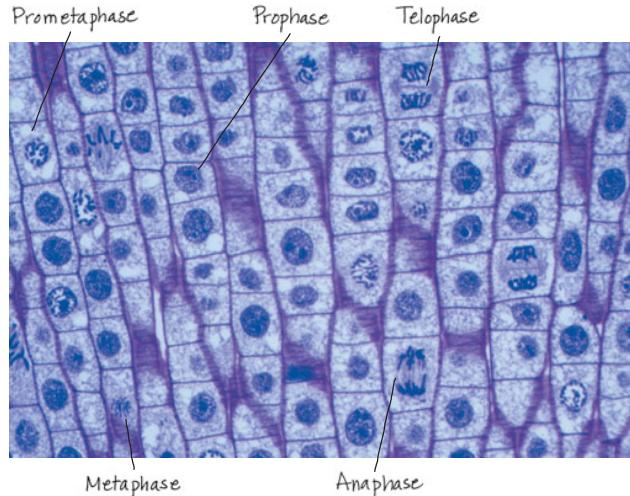
1. The nucleus on the right was originally in the G_1 phase; therefore, it had not yet duplicated its chromosomes. The nucleus on the left was in the M phase, so it had already duplicated its chromosomes. 2. A sufficient amount of MPF has to exist for a cell to pass the G_2 checkpoint; this occurs through the accumulation of cyclin proteins, which combine with Cdk to form (active) MPF. 3. The intracellular estrogen receptor, once activated, would be able to act as a transcription factor in the nucleus, turning on genes that may cause the cell to pass a checkpoint and divide. The HER2 receptor, when activated by a ligand, would form a dimer, and each subunit of the dimer would phosphorylate the other. This would lead to a series of signal transduction steps, ultimately turning on genes in the nucleus. As in the case of the estrogen receptor, the genes would code for proteins necessary to commit the cell to divide.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

12.1 The DNA of a eukaryotic cell is packaged into structures called *chromosomes*. Each chromosome is a long molecule of DNA, which carries hundreds to thousands of genes, with associated proteins that maintain chromosome structure and help control gene activity. This DNA-protein complex is called *chromatin*. The chromatin of each chromosome is long and thin when the cell is not dividing. Prior to cell division, each chromosome is duplicated, and the resulting sister *chromatids* are attached to each other by proteins at the centromeres and, for many species, all along their lengths (a phenomenon called sister chromatid cohesion). **12.2** Chromosomes exist as single DNA molecules in G_1 of interphase and in anaphase and telophase of mitosis. During S phase, DNA replication produces sister chromatids, which persist during G_2 of interphase and through prophase, prometaphase, and metaphase of mitosis. **12.3** Checkpoints allow cellular surveillance mechanisms to determine whether the cell is prepared to go to the next stage. Internal and external signals move a cell past these checkpoints. The G_1 checkpoint, called the "restriction point" in mammalian cells, determines whether a cell will complete the cell cycle and divide or switch into the G_0 phase. The signals to pass this checkpoint often are external—such as growth factors. Passing the G_2 checkpoint requires sufficient numbers of active MPF complexes, which in turn orchestrate several mitotic events. MPF also initiates degradation of its cyclin component, terminating the M phase. The M phase will not begin again until sufficient cyclin is produced during the next S and G_2 phases. The signal to pass the M phase checkpoint is not activated until all chromosomes are attached to kinetochore fibers and are aligned at the metaphase plate. Only then will sister chromatid separation occur.

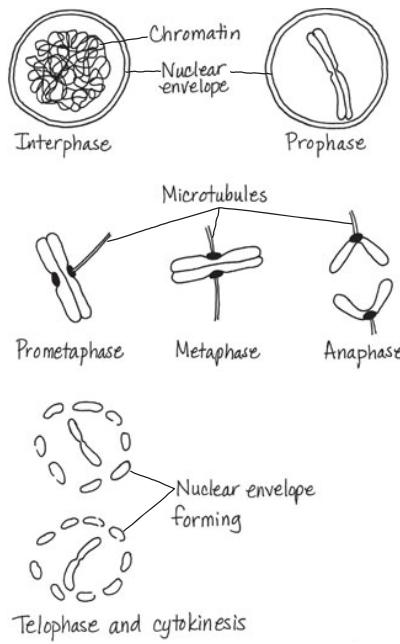
Test Your Understanding

1. b 2. a 3. c 4. c 5. a 6. b 7. a 8. d
9. See Figure 12.7 for a description of major events.



Only one cell is indicated for each stage, but other correct answers are also present in this micrograph.

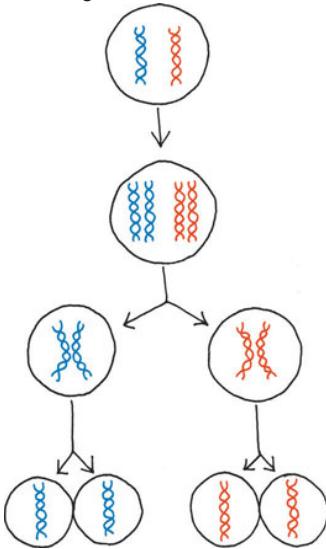
10.



Chapter 13

Figure Questions

Figure 13.4 Two sets of chromosomes are present. Three pairs of homologous chromosomes are present. **Figure 13.7**



(A short strand of DNA is shown here for simplicity, but each chromosome or chromatid contains a very long coiled and folded DNA molecule.)

Figure 13.8 If a cell with six chromosomes undergoes two rounds of mitosis, each of the four resulting cells will have six chromosomes, while the four cells resulting from meiosis in Figure 13.8 each have three chromosomes. In mitosis, DNA replication (and thus chromosome duplication) precedes each prophase, ensuring that daughter cells have the same number of chromosomes as the parent cell. In meiosis, in contrast, DNA replication occurs only before prophase I (not prophase II). Thus, in two rounds of mitosis, the chromosomes duplicate twice and divide twice, while in meiosis, the chromosomes duplicate once and divide twice. **Figure 13.10** Yes. Each of the six chromosomes (three per cell) shown in telophase I has one nonrecombinant chromatid and one recombinant chromatid. Therefore, eight possible sets of chromosomes can be generated for the cell on the left and eight for the cell on the right.

Concept Check 13.1

- Parents pass genes to their offspring; by dictating the production of messenger RNAs (mRNAs), the genes program cells to make specific enzymes and other proteins, whose cumulative action produces an individual's inherited traits.
- Such organisms reproduce by mitosis, which generates offspring whose genomes are exact copies of the parent's genome (in the absence of mutation).
- She should clone it. Cross-breeding it with another plant would generate offspring that have additional variation, which she no longer desires now that she has obtained her ideal orchid.

Concept Check 13.2

- Each of the six chromosomes is duplicated, so each contains two DNA double helices. Therefore, there are 12 DNA molecules in the cell. The haploid number, n , is 3. One set is always haploid.
- This organism has the life cycle shown in Figure 13.6c. Therefore, it must be a fungus or a protist, perhaps an alga.

Concept Check 13.3

- The chromosomes are similar in that each is composed of two sister chromatids, and the individual chromosomes are positioned similarly at the metaphase plate. The chromosomes differ in that in a mitotically dividing cell, sister chromatids of each chromosome are genetically identical, but in a meiotically dividing cell, sister chromatids are genetically distinct because of crossing over in meiosis I. Moreover, the chromosomes in metaphase of mitosis can be a diploid set or a haploid set, but the chromosomes in metaphase of meiosis II always consist of a haploid set.
- If crossing over did not occur, the two homologs would not be associated in any way. This might result in incorrect arrangement of homologs during metaphase I and ultimately in formation of gametes with an abnormal number of chromosomes.

Concept Check 13.4

- Mutations in a gene lead to the different versions (alleles) of that gene.
- Without crossing over, independent assortment of chromosomes during meiosis I theoretically can generate 2^n possible haploid gametes, and random fertilization can produce $2^n \times 2^m$ possible diploid zygotes. Because the haploid number (n) of grasshoppers is 23 and that of fruit flies is 4, two grasshoppers would be expected to produce a greater variety of zygotes than would two fruit flies.
- If the segments of the maternal and paternal chromatids that undergo crossing over are genetically identical and thus have the same two alleles for every gene, then the

recombinant chromosomes will be genetically equivalent to the parental chromosomes. Crossing over contributes to genetic variation only when it involves the rearrangement of different alleles.

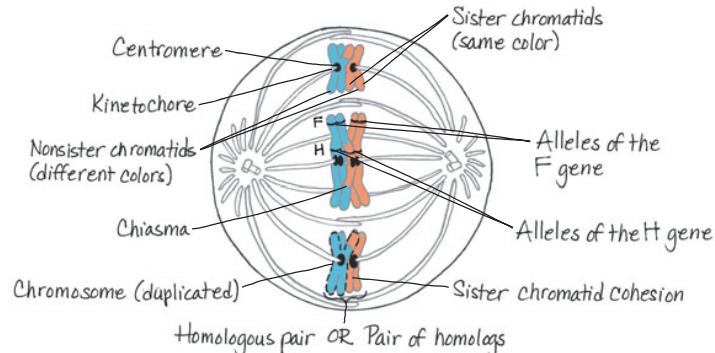
Summary of Key Concepts Questions

- Genes program specific traits, and offspring inherit their genes from each parent, accounting for similarities in their appearance to one or the other parent. Humans reproduce sexually, which ensures new combinations of genes (and thus traits) in the offspring. Consequently, the offspring are not clones of their parents (which would be the case if humans reproduced asexually).
- Animals and plants both reproduce sexually, alternating meiosis with fertilization. Both have haploid gametes that unite to form a diploid zygote, which then goes on to divide mitotically, forming a diploid multicellular organism. In animals, haploid cells become gametes and don't undergo mitosis, while in plants, the haploid cells resulting from meiosis undergo mitosis to form a haploid multicellular organism, the gametophyte. This organism then goes on to generate haploid gametes. (In plants such as trees, the gametophyte is quite reduced in size and not obvious to the casual observer.)
- At the end of meiosis I, the two members of a homologous pair end up in different cells, so they cannot pair up and undergo crossing over.
- First, during independent assortment in metaphase I, each pair of homologous chromosomes lines up independent of each other pair at the metaphase plate, so a daughter cell of meiosis I randomly inherits either a maternal or paternal chromosome. Second, due to crossing over, each chromosome is not exclusively maternal or paternal, but includes regions at the ends of the chromatid from a nonsister chromatid (a chromatid of the other homolog). (The nonsister segment can also be in an internal region of the chromatid if a second crossover occurs beyond the first one before the end of the chromatid.) This provides much additional diversity in the form of new combinations of alleles. Third, random fertilization ensures even more variation, since any sperm of a large number containing many possible genetic combinations can fertilize any egg of a similarly large number of possible combinations.

Test Your Understanding

- a
- b
- c
- d
- e

- a

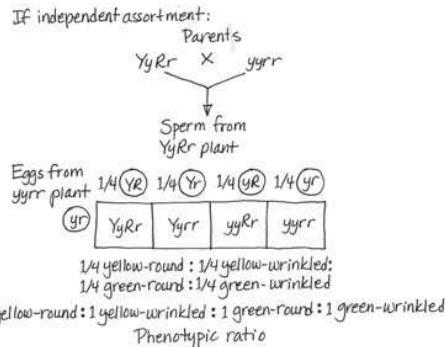
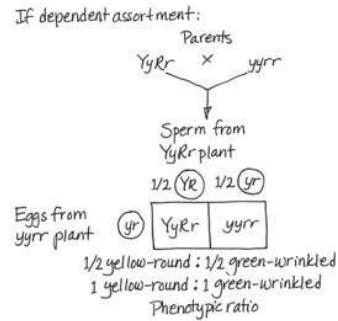


- A haploid set is made up of one long, one medium, and one short chromosome. For example, the chromosomes of one color make up a haploid set. (In cases where crossovers have occurred, a haploid set of one color may include segments of chromatids of the other color.) All red and blue chromosomes together make up a diploid set.
- Metaphase I. This cell must be undergoing meiosis because homologous chromosomes are associated with each other at the metaphase plate; this does not occur in mitosis.

Chapter 14

Figure Questions

Figure 14.3 All offspring would have purple flowers. (The ratio would be 1 purple : 0 white.) The P generation plants are true-breeding, so mating two purple-flowered plants produces the same result as self-pollination: All the offspring have the same trait.

Figure 14.8

Yes, this cross would also have allowed Mendel to make different predictions for the two hypotheses, thereby allowing him to distinguish the correct one.

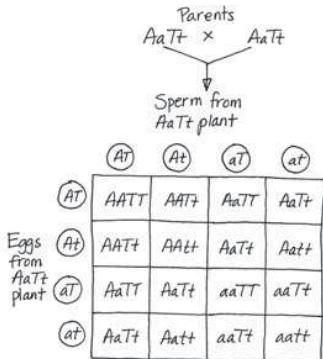
Figure 14.10 Your classmate would probably point out that the F_1 generation hybrids show an intermediate phenotype between those of the homozygous parents, which supports the blending hypothesis. You could respond that crossing the F_1 hybrids results in the reappearance of the white phenotype, rather than identical pink offspring, which fails to support the idea of traits blending during inheritance. **Figure 14.11** Both the I^A and I^B alleles are dominant to the i allele, which results in no attached carbohydrate. The I^A and I^B alleles are codominant; both are expressed in the phenotype of $I^A I^B$ heterozygotes, who have type AB blood.

Figure 14.12 In this cross the final "3" and "1" of a standard cross are lumped together as a single phenotype. This occurs because in dogs that are ee , no pigment is deposited, thus the three dogs that have a B in their genotype (normally black) can no longer be distinguished from the dog who is bb (normally brown).

Figure 14.16 In the Punnett square, two of the three individuals with normal coloration are carriers, so the probability is $2/3$. (Note that you must take into account everything you know when you calculate probability: You know she is not aa , so there are only three possible genotypes to consider.)

Concept Check 14.1

- According to the law of independent assortment, 25 plants ($1/16$ of the offspring) are predicted to be $aatt$, or recessive for both characters. The actual result is likely to differ slightly from this value.



- The plant could make eight different gametes (YRI , YRi , YrI , Yri , yRI , yRi , yrI , and yri). To fit all the possible gametes in a self-pollination, a Punnett square would need 8 rows and 8 columns. It would have spaces for the 64 possible unions of gametes in the offspring. **3.** Self-pollination is sexual reproduction because meiosis is involved in forming gametes, which unite during fertilization. As a result, the offspring in self-pollination are genetically different from the parent. (As mentioned in the footnote near the beginning of Concept 14.1, we have simplified the explanation in referring to the single pea plant as a parent. Technically, the gametophytes in the flower are the two "parents.")

Concept Check 14.2

- 1/2 homozygous dominant (AA), 0 homozygous recessive (aa), and 1/2 heterozygous (Aa) **2.** $1/4 BBDD$; $1/4 BbDD$; $1/4 BBdD$; $1/4 BbDd$ **3.** The genotypes that fulfill this condition are $ppyyII$, $ppYyii$, $Pppyii$, $ppYYii$, and $ppyyii$. Use the multiplication rule to find the probability of getting each genotype, and then use the addition rule to find the overall probability of meeting the conditions of this problem:

$$\begin{aligned} ppYYII &: \frac{1}{2} (\text{probability of } pp) \times \frac{1}{4} (yy) \times \frac{1}{2} (ii) = \frac{1}{16} \\ ppYyii &: \frac{1}{2} (pp) \times \frac{1}{2} (Yy) \times \frac{1}{2} (ii) = \frac{1}{16} \\ Pppyii &: \frac{1}{2} (Pp) \times \frac{1}{4} (yy) \times \frac{1}{2} (ii) = \frac{1}{16} \\ ppYYii &: \frac{1}{2} (pp) \times \frac{1}{4} (YY) \times \frac{1}{2} (ii) = \frac{1}{16} \\ ppyyii &: \frac{1}{2} (pp) \times \frac{1}{4} (yy) \times \frac{1}{2} (ii) = \frac{1}{16} \end{aligned}$$

Fraction predicted to have at least two recessive traits $= \frac{6}{16} \text{ or } \frac{3}{8}$

Concept Check 14.3

- Incomplete dominance describes the relationship between two alleles of a single gene, whereas epistasis relates to the genetic relationship between two genes (and the respective alleles of each). **2.** Half of the children would be expected to have type A blood and half type B blood. **3.** The black and white alleles are incompletely dominant, with heterozygotes being gray in color. A cross between a gray rooster and a black hen should yield approximately equal numbers of gray and black offspring.

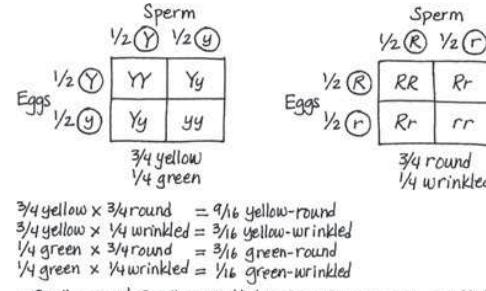
Concept Check 14.4

- 1/9 (Since cystic fibrosis is caused by a recessive allele, Beth and Tom's siblings who have CF must be homozygous recessive. Therefore, each parent must be a carrier of the recessive allele. Since neither Beth nor Tom has CF, this means they each have a $2/3$ chance of being a carrier. If they are both carriers, there is a $1/4$ chance that they will have a child with CF. $2/3 \times 2/3 \times 1/4 = 1/9$.) **2.** In normal hemoglobin, the sixth amino acid is glutamic acid (Glu), which is acidic (has a negative charge on its side chain). In sickle-cell hemoglobin, Glu is replaced by valine (Val), which is a nonpolar amino acid, very different from Glu. The primary structure of a protein (its amino acid sequence) ultimately determines the shape of the protein and thus its function. The substitution of Val for Glu enables the hemoglobin molecules to interact with each other and form long fibers, leading to the protein's deficient function and the deformation of the red blood cell. **3.** Joan's genotype is Dd . Because the allele for polydactyl (D) is dominant to the allele for five digits per appendage (d), the trait is expressed in people with either the DD or Dd genotype. But because Joan's father does not have polydactyl, his genotype must be dd , which means that Joan inherited a d allele from him. Therefore Joan, who does have the trait, must be heterozygous. **4.** In the monohybrid cross involving flower color, the ratio is 3:1 purple : 1 white, while in the human family in the pedigree, the ratio in the third generation is 1 free : 1 attached ear-lobe. The difference is due to the small sample size (two offspring) in the human family. If the second-generation couple in this pedigree were able to have 929 offspring as in the pea plant cross, the ratio would likely be closer to 3:1. (Note that none of the pea plant crosses in Table 14.1 yielded exactly a 3:1 ratio.)

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

- Alternative versions of genes, called alleles, are passed from parent to offspring during sexual reproduction. In a cross between purple- and white-flowered homozygous parents, the F_1 offspring are all heterozygous, each inheriting a purple allele from one parent and a white allele from the other. Because the purple allele is dominant, it determines the phenotype of the F_1 offspring to be purple, and the expression of the white allele is masked. Only in the F_2 generation is it possible for a white allele to exist in a homozygous state, which causes the white trait to be expressed.

14.2

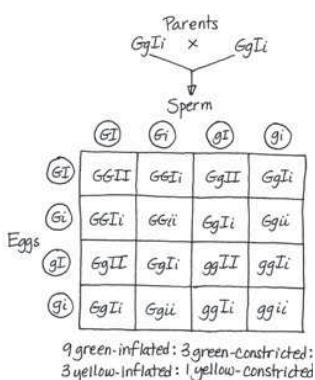


- The ABO blood group is an example of multiple alleles because this single gene has more than two alleles (I^A , I^B , and i). Two of the alleles, I^A and I^B , exhibit codominance, since both carbohydrates (A and B) are present when these two alleles exist together in a genotype. I^A and I^B each exhibit complete dominance over the i allele. This situation is not an example of incomplete dominance because each allele affects the phenotype in a distinguishable way, so the result is not intermediate between the two phenotypes. Because this situation involves a single gene, it is not an example of epistasis or polygenic inheritance. **14.4** The chance of the fourth child having cystic fibrosis is $1/4$, as it was for each of the other children, because each birth is an independent event. We already know both parents are

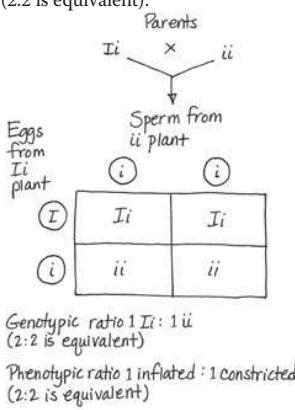
carriers, so whether their first three children are carriers or not has no bearing on the probability that their next child will have the disease. The parents' genotypes provide the only relevant information.

Test Your Understanding

1.



2. Man $I^A i$; woman $I^B i$; child ii . Genotypes for future children are predicted to be $\frac{1}{4} I^A I^B$, $\frac{1}{4} I^A i$, $\frac{1}{4} I^B i$, $\frac{1}{4} ii$. **3.** $\frac{1}{2}$ **4.** A cross of $ii \times ii$ would yield offspring with a genotypic ratio of $1 II : 1 ii$ (2:2 is an equivalent answer) and a phenotypic ratio of inflated : constricted (2:2 is equivalent).



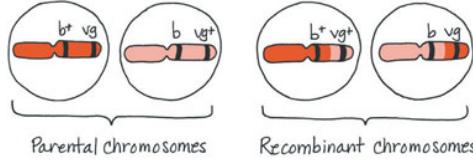
5. (a) $\frac{1}{64}$; (b) $\frac{1}{64}$; (c) $\frac{1}{8}$; (d) $\frac{1}{32}$ **6.** (a) $\frac{3}{4} \times \frac{3}{4} \times \frac{3}{4} = \frac{27}{64}$; (b) $1 - \frac{27}{64} = \frac{37}{64}$; (c) $\frac{1}{4} \times \frac{1}{4} \times \frac{1}{4} = \frac{1}{64}$; (d) $1 - \frac{1}{64} = \frac{63}{64}$ **7.** (a) $\frac{1}{256}$; (b) $\frac{1}{16}$; (c) $\frac{1}{256}$; (d) $\frac{1}{64}$; (e) $\frac{1}{128}$ **8.** (a) 1; (b) $\frac{1}{32}$; (c) $\frac{1}{8}$; (d) $\frac{1}{2}$ **9.** $\frac{1}{9}$ **10.** Matings of the original mutant cat with true-breeding noncurl cats will produce both curl and noncurl F_1 offspring if the curl allele is dominant, but only noncurl offspring if the curl allele is recessive. You would obtain some true-breeding offspring homozygous for the curl allele from matings between the F_1 cats resulting from the original curl \times noncurl crosses whether the curl trait is dominant or recessive. You know that cats are true-breeding when curl \times curl matings produce only curl offspring. As it turns out, the allele that causes curled ears is dominant. **11.** 25% or $\frac{1}{4}$, will be cross-eyed; all (100%) of the cross-eyed offspring will also be white. **12.** The dominant allele I is epistatic to the P/p locus, and thus the genotypic ratio for the F_1 generation will be 9 $I-P-$ (colorless) : 3 $iiP-$ (purple) : 1 ipp (red). Overall, the phenotypic ratio is 12 colorless : 3 purple : 1 red. **13.** Recessive. All affected individuals (Arlene, Tom, Wilma, and Carla) are homozygous recessive aa . George is Aa , since some of his children with Arlene are affected. Sam, Ann, Daniel, and Alan are each Aa , since they are all unaffected children with one affected parent. Michael also is Aa , since he has an affected child (Carla) with his heterozygous wife Ann. Sandra, Tina, and Christopher can each have either the AA or Aa genotype. **14.** $\frac{1}{6}$

Chapter 15

Figure Questions

Figure 15.2 The ratio would be 1 yellow-round : 1 green-round : 1 yellow-wrinkled : 1 green-wrinkled. **Figure 15.4** About $\frac{3}{4}$ of the F_2 offspring would have red eyes and about $\frac{1}{4}$ would have white eyes. About half of the white-eyed flies would be female and half would be male; similarly, about half of the red-eyed flies would be female and half would be male. (Note that the homologs with the eye color alleles would be the same shape in the Punnett square, and each offspring would inherit two alleles. The sex of the flies would be determined separately by inheritance of the sex chromosomes. Thus your Punnett square would have four possible combinations in sperm and four in eggs; it would have 16 squares altogether.) **Figure 15.7** All the males would be color-blind, and all the females would be carriers. (Another way to say this is that $\frac{1}{2}$ of the offspring would be color-blind males, and $\frac{1}{2}$ of the offspring would be carrier females.) **Figure 15.9** The two largest classes would still be the parental-type offspring (offspring with the phenotypes of the true-breeding P generation flies), but now they would be gray-vestigial

and black-normal because those were the specific allele combinations in the P generation. **Figure 15.10** The two chromosomes below, left, are like the two chromosomes inherited by the F_1 female, one from each P generation fly. They are passed by the F_1 female intact to the offspring and thus could be called "parental" chromosomes. The other two chromosomes result from crossing over during meiosis in the F_1 female. Because they have combinations of alleles not seen in either of the F_1 female's chromosomes, they can be called "recombinant" chromosomes. (Note that in this example, the alleles on the recombinant chromosomes, b^+vg^+ and $b vg$, are the allele combinations that were on the parental chromosomes in the cross shown in Figures 15.9 and 15.10. The basis for calling them parental chromosomes is that they have the combination of alleles that was present on the P generation chromosomes.)



Concept Check 15.1

1. The law of segregation relates to the inheritance of alleles for a single character. The law of independent assortment of alleles relates to the inheritance of alleles for two characters. **2.** The physical basis for the law of segregation is the separation of homologs in anaphase I. The physical basis for the law of independent assortment is the alternative arrangements of different homologous chromosome pairs in metaphase I. **3.** To show the mutant phenotype, a male needs to possess only one mutant allele. If this gene had been on a pair of autosomes, *two* mutant alleles would have had to be present for an individual to show the recessive mutant phenotype, a much less probable situation.

Concept Check 15.2

1. Because the gene for this eye-color character is located on the X chromosome, all female offspring will be red-eyed and heterozygous ($X^W X^W$); all male offspring will inherit a Y chromosome from the father and be white-eyed ($X^W Y$). (Another way to say this is that $\frac{1}{2}$ of the offspring will be red-eyed, heterozygous [carrier] females, and $\frac{1}{2}$ will be white-eyed males.) **2.** $\frac{1}{4}$ ($\frac{1}{2}$ chance that the child will inherit a Y chromosome from the father and be male $\times \frac{1}{2}$ chance that he will inherit the X carrying the disease allele from his mother). If the child is a boy, there is a $\frac{1}{2}$ chance he will have the disease; a female would have zero chance (but $\frac{1}{2}$ chance of being a carrier). **3.** With a disorder caused by a dominant allele, there is no such thing as a "carrier" since those with the allele have the disorder. Because the allele is dominant, the females lose any "advantage" in having two X chromosomes, since one disorder-associated allele is sufficient to result in the disorder. All fathers who have the dominant allele will pass it along to *all* their daughters, who will also have the disorder. A mother who has the allele (and thus the disorder) will pass it to half of her sons and half of her daughters.

Concept Check 15.3

1. Crossing over during meiosis I in the heterozygous parent produces some gametes with recombinant genotypes for the two genes. Offspring with a recombinant phenotype arise from fertilization of the recombinant gametes by homozygous recessive gametes from the double-mutant parent. **2.** In each case, the alleles contributed by the female parent (in the egg) determine the phenotype of the offspring because the male in this cross contributes only recessive alleles. Thus, identifying the phenotype of the offspring tells you what alleles were in the egg. **3.** No. The order could be A-C-B or C-A-B. To determine which possibility is correct, you need to know the recombination frequency between B and C.

Concept Check 15.4

1. In meiosis, a combined 14-21 chromosome will behave as one chromosome. If a gamete receives the combined 14-21 chromosome and a normal copy of chromosome 21, trisomy 21 will result when this gamete combines with a normal gamete during fertilization. **2.** No. The child can be either $I^A I^A$ or $I^A ii$. A sperm of genotype $I^A I^A$ could result from nondisjunction in the father during meiosis II, while an egg with the genotype ii could result from nondisjunction in the mother during either meiosis I or meiosis II. **3.** Activation of this gene could lead to the production of too much of this kinase. If the kinase is involved in a signaling pathway that triggers cell division, too much of it could trigger unrestricted cell division, which in turn could contribute to the development of a cancer (in this case, a cancer of one type of white blood cell).

Concept Check 15.5

1. Inactivation of an X chromosome in females and genomic imprinting. Because of X inactivation, the effective dose of genes on the X chromosome is the same in males and females. As a result of genomic imprinting, only one allele of certain genes is phenotypically expressed. **2.** The genes for leaf coloration are located in plastids within the cytoplasm. Normally, only the maternal parent transmits plastid genes to offspring. Since variegated offspring are produced only when the female parent is of the B variety, we can conclude that variety B contains both the wild-type and mutant alleles of pigment genes, producing variegated leaves. (Variety A must contain only the wild-type allele of pigment genes.) **3.** Each cell contains numerous mitochondria, and in affected individuals, most cells contain a variable mixture of normal and mutant mitochondria. The normal mitochondria carry out enough cellular respiration for survival. (The situation is similar for chloroplasts.)

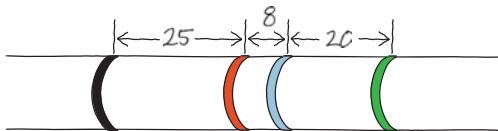
Summary of Key Concepts Questions

15.1 Because the sex chromosomes are different from each other and because they determine the sex of the offspring, Morgan could use the sex of the offspring as a phenotypic characteristic to follow the parental chromosomes. (He could also have followed them under a microscope, as the X and Y chromosomes look different.) At the same time, he could record eye color to follow the eye-color alleles. **15.2** Males have only one X chromosome, along with a Y chromosome, while females have two X chromosomes. The Y chromosome has very few genes on it, while the X has about 1,000. When a recessive X-linked allele that causes a disorder is inherited by a male on the X from his mother, there isn't a second allele present on the Y (males are hemizygous), so the male has the disorder. Because females have two X chromosomes, they must inherit two recessive alleles in order to have the disorder, a rarer occurrence. **15.3** Crossing over results in new combinations of alleles. Crossing over is a random occurrence, and the more distance there is between two genes, the more chances there are for crossing over to occur, leading to a new allele combination. **15.4** In inversions and reciprocal translocations, the same genetic material is present in the same relative amount but just organized differently. In aneuploidy, duplications, deletions, and nonreciprocal translocations, the balance of genetic material is upset, as large segments are either missing or present in more than one copy. Apparently, this type of imbalance is very damaging to the organism. (Although it isn't lethal in the developing embryo, the reciprocal translocation that produces the Philadelphia chromosome can lead to a serious condition, cancer, by altering the expression of important genes.) **15.5** In these cases, the sex of the parent contributing an allele affects the inheritance pattern. For imprinted genes, either the paternal or the maternal allele is expressed, depending on the imprint. For mitochondrial and chloroplast genes, only the maternal contribution will affect offspring phenotype because the offspring inherit these organelles from the mother, via the egg cytoplasm.

Test Your Understanding

1. 0; $\frac{1}{2}$; $\frac{1}{16}$
2. Recessive; if the disorder were dominant, it would affect at least one parent of a child born with the disorder. The disorder's inheritance is sex-linked because it is seen only in boys. For a girl to have the disorder, she would have to inherit recessive alleles from both parents. This would be very rare, since males with the recessive allele on their X chromosome die in their early teens.
3. 17%; yes, it is consistent. In Figure 15.9, the recombination frequency was also 17%. (You'd expect this to be the case since these are the very same two genes, and their distance from each other wouldn't change from one experiment to another.)
4. Between T and A, 12%; between A and S, 5% **5.** Between T and S, 18%; sequence of genes is T-A-S **6.** wild-type heterozygous for normal wings and red eyes \times recessive homozygous for vestigial wings and purple eyes **7.** Fifty percent of the offspring will show phenotypes resulting from crossovers. These results would be the same as those from a cross where A and B were not on the same chromosome, and you would interpret the results to mean that the genes are unlinked. (Further crosses involving other genes on the same chromosome would reveal the genetic linkage and map distances.) **8.** 450 each of blue-oval and white-round (parents) and 50 each of blue-round and white-oval (recombinants) **9.** About one-third of the distance from the vestigial-wing locus to the brown-eye locus **10.** Because bananas are triploid, homologous pairs cannot line up during meiosis. Therefore, it is not possible to generate gametes that can fuse to produce a zygote with the triploid number of chromosomes. **12.** (a) For each pair of genes, you had to generate an F₁ dihybrid fly; let's use the A and B genes as an example. You obtained homozygous parental flies, either the first with dominant alleles of the two genes (AABB) and the second with recessive alleles (aabb), or the first with dominant alleles of gene A and recessive alleles of gene B (AAbb) and the second with recessive alleles of gene A and dominant alleles of gene B (aaBB). Breeding either of these pairs of P generation flies gave you an F₁ dihybrid, which you then testcrossed with a doubly homozygous recessive fly (aabb). You classed the offspring as parental or recombinant, based on the genotypes of the P generation parents (either of the two pairs described above). You added up the number of recombinant types and then divided by the total number of offspring. This gave you the recombination percentage (in this case, 8%), which you can translate into map units (8 map units) to construct your map.

(b)



Chapter 16

Figure Questions

Figure 16.2 The living S cells found in the blood sample were able to reproduce to yield more S cells, indicating that the S trait is a permanent, heritable change, rather than just a one-time use of the dead S cells' capsules. **Figure 16.4** The radioactivity would have been found in the pellet when proteins were labeled (batch 1) because proteins would have had to enter the bacterial cells to program them with genetic instructions. It's hard for us to imagine now, but the DNA might have played a structural role that allowed some of the proteins to be injected while it remained outside the bacterial cell (thus no radioactivity in the pellet in batch 2).

Figure 16.11 The tube from the first replication would look the same, with a middle band of hybrid $^{15}\text{N}-^{14}\text{N}$ DNA, but the second tube would not have the upper band of two light blue strands. Instead, it would have a bottom band of two dark blue strands, like the bottom band in the result predicted after one replication

in the conservative model. **Figure 16.12** In the bubble at the top in (b), arrows should be drawn pointing left and right to indicate the two replication forks.

Figure 16.14 Looking at any of the DNA strands, we see that one end is called the 5' end and the other the 3' end. If we proceed from the 5' end to the 3' end on the left-most strand, for example, we list the components in this order: phosphate group \rightarrow 5' C of the sugar \rightarrow 3' C \rightarrow phosphate \rightarrow 5' C \rightarrow 3' C. Going in the opposite direction on the same strand, the components proceed in the reverse order: 3' C \rightarrow 5' C \rightarrow phosphate. Thus, the two directions are distinguishable, which is what we mean when we say that the strands have directionality. (Review Figure 16.5 if necessary.)

Figure 16.17

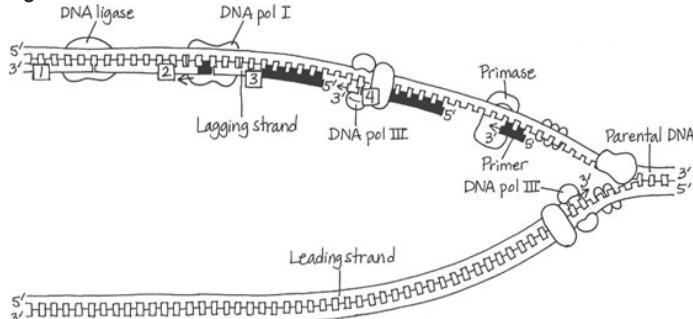


Figure 16.18

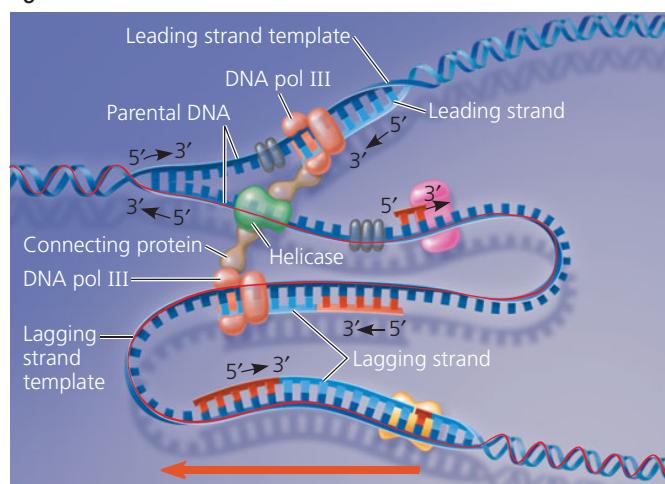


Figure 16.23 The two members of a homologous pair (which would be the same color) would be associated tightly together at the metaphase plate. In mitosis, however, each chromosome would be lined up individually, so the two chromosomes of the same color would be in different places at the metaphase plate.

Concept Check 16.1

1. You can't tell which end is the 5' end. You need to know which end has a phosphate group on the 5' carbon (the 5' end) or which end has an —OH group on the 3' carbon (the 3' end).
2. He expected that the mouse injected with the mixture of heat-killed S cells and living R cells would survive, since neither type of cell alone would kill the mouse.

Concept Check 16.2

1. Complementary base pairing ensures that the two daughter molecules are exact copies of the parental molecule. When the two strands of the parental molecule separate, each serves as a template on which nucleotides are arranged, by the base-pairing rules, into new complementary strands.
2. DNA pol III covalently adds nucleotides to new DNA strands and proofreads each added nucleotide for correct base pairing.
3. In the cell cycle, DNA synthesis occurs during the S phase, between the G₁ and G₂ phases of interphase. DNA replication is therefore complete before the mitotic phase begins.
4. Synthesis of the leading strand is initiated by an RNA primer, which must be removed and replaced with DNA, a task that could not be performed if the cell's DNA pol I were nonfunctional. In the overview box in Figure 16.17, just to the left of the top origin of replication, a functional DNA pol I would replace the RNA primer of the leading strand (shown in red) with DNA nucleotides (blue). The nucleotides would be added onto the 3' end of the final Okazaki fragment of the upper lagging strand (the right half of the replication bubble).

Concept Check 16.3

1. A nucleosome is made up of eight histone proteins, two each of four different types, around which DNA is wound. Linker DNA runs from one nucleosome to the next.
2. Euchromatin is chromatin that becomes less compacted during

interphase and is accessible to the cellular machinery responsible for gene activity. Heterochromatin, on the other hand, remains quite condensed during interphase and contains genes that are largely inaccessible to this machinery. **3.** The nuclear lamina is a netlike array of protein filaments that provides mechanical support just inside the nuclear envelope and thus maintains the shape of the nucleus. Considerable evidence also supports the existence of a nuclear matrix, a framework of protein fibers extending throughout the nuclear interior.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

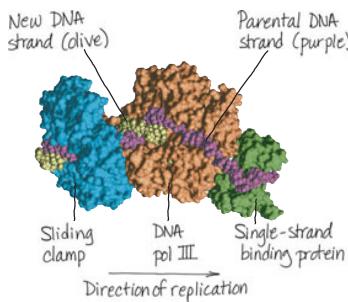
16.1 Each strand in the double helix has polarity; the end with a phosphate group on the 5' carbon of the sugar is called the 5' end, and the end with an—OH group on the 3' carbon of the sugar is called the 3' end. The two strands run in opposite directions, one running 5' → 3' and the other alongside it running 3' → 5'. Thus, each end of the molecule has both a 5' and a 3' end. This arrangement is called "antiparallel." If the strands were parallel, they would both run 5' → 3' in the same direction, so an end of the molecule would have either two 5' ends or two 3' ends. **16.2** On both the leading and lagging strands, DNA polymerase adds onto the 3' end of an RNA primer synthesized by primase, synthesizing DNA in the 5' → 3' direction. Because the parental strands are antiparallel, however, only on the leading strand does synthesis proceed continuously into the replication fork. The lagging strand is synthesized bit by bit in the direction away from the fork as a series of shorter Okazaki fragments, which are later joined together by DNA ligase. Each fragment is initiated by synthesis of an RNA primer by primase as soon as a given stretch of single-stranded template strand is opened up. Although both strands are synthesized at the same rate, synthesis of the lagging strand is delayed because initiation of each fragment begins only when sufficient template strand is available. **16.3** Most of the chromatin in an interphase nucleus is fairly uncondensed. Much is present as the 30-nm fiber, with some in the form of the 10-nm fiber and some as looped domains of the 30-nm fiber. (These different levels of chromatin packing may reflect differences in gene expression occurring in these regions.) Also, a small percentage of the chromatin, such as that at the centromeres and telomeres, is highly condensed heterochromatin.

Test Your Understanding

1. c 2. c 3. b 4. d 5. a 6. d 7. b 8. a

9. Like histones, the *E. coli* proteins would be expected to contain many basic (positively charged) amino acids, such as lysine and arginine, which can form weak bonds with the negatively charged phosphate groups on the sugar-phosphate backbone of the DNA molecule.

11.



Chapter 17

Figure Questions

Figure 17.2 The previously presumed pathway would have been wrong. The new results would support this pathway: precursor → citrulline → ornithine → arginine. They would also indicate that class I mutants have a defect in the second step and class II mutants have a defect in the first step. **Figure 17.4** The mRNA sequence (5'-UGGUUUGGCUCA-3') is the same as the nontemplate DNA strand sequence (5'-TGGTTTGGCTCA-3'), except there is a U in the mRNA wherever there is a T in the DNA. **Figure 17.7** The processes are similar in that polymerases form polynucleotides complementary to an antiparallel DNA template strand. In replication, however, both strands act as templates, whereas in transcription, only one DNA strand acts as a template. **Figure 17.8** The RNA polymerase would bind directly to the promoter, rather than depending on the previous binding of other factors. **Figure 17.21** It would be packaged in a vesicle, transported to the Golgi apparatus for further processing, and then transported via a vesicle to the plasma membrane. The vesicle would fuse with the membrane, releasing the protein outside the cell. **Figure 17.23** The mRNA farthest to the right (the longest one) started transcription first. The ribosome at the top, closest to the DNA, started translating first and thus has the longest polypeptide.

Concept Check 17.1

1. Recessive 2. A polypeptide made up of 10 Gly (glycine) amino acids
3.

Template sequence
(from problem):

3'-TTCAGTCGT-5'

Nontemplate sequence: 5'-AAGTCAGCA-3'

mRNA sequence: 5'-AAGUCAGCA-3'

The nontemplate and mRNA nucleotide sequences are the same except that there is a T in the nontemplate strand of DNA wherever there is a U in the mRNA.

4.

"Template sequence" (from nontemplate sequence in problem, written 3' → 5'): 3'-ACGACTGAA-5'

mRNA sequence: 5'-UGCUGACUU-3'

Translated: Cys-STOP-Leu

(Remember that the mRNA is antiparallel to the DNA strand.) A protein translated from the nontemplate sequence would have a completely different amino acid sequence and would most likely be nonfunctional. (It would also be shorter because of the stop signal shown in the mRNA sequence above—and possibly others earlier in the mRNA sequence.)

Concept Check 17.2

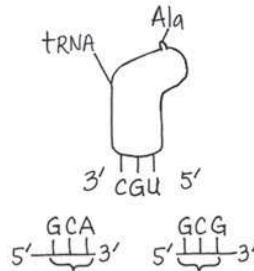
1. A promoter is the region of DNA to which RNA polymerase binds to begin transcription. It is at the upstream end of the gene (transcription unit). **2.** In a bacterial cell, part of the RNA polymerase recognizes the gene's promoter and binds to it. In a eukaryotic cell, transcription factors mediate the binding of RNA polymerase to the promoter. In both cases, sequences in the promoter bind precisely to the RNA polymerase, so the enzyme is in the right location and orientation. **3.** The transcription factor that recognizes the TATA sequence would be unable to bind, so RNA polymerase could not bind and transcription of that gene probably would not occur.

Concept Check 17.3

1. Due to alternative splicing of exons, each gene can result in multiple different mRNAs and can thus direct synthesis of multiple different proteins. **2.** In watching a show recorded with a DVR, you watch segments of the show itself (exons) and fast-forward through the commercials, which are thus like introns. **3.** Once the mRNA has exited the nucleus, the cap prevents it from being degraded by hydrolytic enzymes and facilitates its attachment to ribosomes. If the cap were removed from all mRNAs, the cell would no longer be able to synthesize any proteins and would probably die.

Concept Check 17.4

1. First, each aminoacyl-tRNA synthetase specifically recognizes a single amino acid and attaches it only to an appropriate tRNA. Second, a tRNA charged with its specific amino acid binds only to an mRNA codon for that amino acid. **2.** The structure and function of the ribosome seem to depend more on the rRNAs than on the ribosomal proteins. Because it is single-stranded, an RNA molecule can hydrogen-bond with itself and with other RNA molecules. RNA molecules make up the interface between the two ribosomal subunits, so presumably RNA-RNA binding helps hold the ribosome together. The binding site for mRNA in the ribosome includes rRNA that can bind the mRNA. Also, complementary hydrogen bonding within an RNA molecule allows it to assume a particular three-dimensional shape and, along with the RNA's functional groups, enables rRNA to catalyze peptide bond formation during translation. **3.** A signal peptide on the leading end of the polypeptide being synthesized is recognized by a signal-recognition particle that brings the ribosome to the ER membrane. There the ribosome attaches and continues to synthesize the polypeptide, depositing it in the ER lumen. **4.** Because of wobble, the tRNA could bind to either 5'-GCA-3' or 5'-GCG-3', both of which code for alanine (Ala). Alanine would be attached to the tRNA.



5. When one ribosome terminates translation and dissociates, the two subunits would be very close to the cap. This could facilitate their rebinding and initiating synthesis of a new polypeptide, thus increasing the efficiency of translation.

Concept Check 17.5

1. In the mRNA, the reading frame downstream from the deletion is shifted, leading to a long string of incorrect amino acids in the polypeptide, and in most cases, a stop codon will arise, leading to premature termination. The polypeptide will most likely be nonfunctional. **2.** Heterozygous individuals, said to have sickle-cell trait, have a copy each of the wild-type allele and the sickle-cell allele. Both alleles will be expressed, so these individuals will have both normal and sickle-cell hemoglobin molecules. Apparently, having a mix of the two forms of β -globin has no effect under most conditions, but during prolonged periods of low blood oxygen (such as at higher altitudes), these individuals can show some signs of sickle-cell disease.

3.

Normal DNA sequence

(Template strand is on top): 3'-TACTTGTCGATATC-5'
5'-ATGAAACAGGCTATAG-3'

mRNA sequence: 5'-AUGAACAGGUUAUAG-3'

Amino acid sequence: Met-Asn-Arg-Leu-STOP

Mutated DNA sequence

(Template strand is on top): 3'-TACTTGCCAATATC-5'
5'-ATGAAACAGGTTATAG-3'

mRNA sequence: 5'-AUGAACAGGUUAUAG-3'

Amino acid sequence: Met-Asn-Arg-Leu-STOP

No effect: The amino acid sequence is Met-Asn-Arg-Leu both before and after the mutation because the mRNA codons 5'-CUA-3' and 5'-UUA-3' both code for Leu. (The fifth codon is a stop codon.)

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

17.1 A gene contains genetic information in the form of a nucleotide sequence. The gene is first transcribed into an RNA molecule, and a messenger RNA molecule is ultimately translated into a polypeptide. The polypeptide makes up part or all of a protein, which performs a function in the cell and contributes to the phenotype of the organism. **17.2** Both bacterial and eukaryotic genes have promoters, regions where RNA polymerase ultimately binds and begins transcription. In bacteria, RNA polymerase binds directly to the promoter; in eukaryotes, transcription factors bind first to the promoter, and then RNA polymerase binds to the transcription factors and promoter together. **17.3** Both the 5' cap and the poly-A tail help the mRNA exit from the nucleus and then, in the cytoplasm, help ensure mRNA stability and allow it to bind to ribosomes. **17.4** tRNAs function as translators between the nucleotide-based language of mRNA and the amino-acid-based language of polypeptides. A tRNA carries a specific amino acid, and the anticodon on the tRNA is complementary to the codon on the mRNA that codes for that amino acid. In the ribosome, the tRNA binds to the A site. Then, the polypeptide being synthesized (currently on the tRNA in the P site) is joined to the new amino acid, which becomes the new (C-terminal) end of the polypeptide. Next, the tRNA in the A site moves to the P site. When the polypeptide is transferred to the new tRNA, thus adding the new amino acid, the now empty tRNA moves from the P site to the E site, where it exits the ribosome. **17.5** When a nucleotide base is altered chemically, its base-pairing characteristics may be changed. When that happens, an incorrect nucleotide is likely to be incorporated into the complementary strand during the next replication of the DNA, and successive rounds of replication will perpetuate the mutation. Once the gene is transcribed, the mutated codon may code for a different amino acid that inhibits or changes the function of a protein. If the chemical change in the base is detected and repaired by the DNA repair system before the next replication, no mutation will result.

Test Your Understanding

1. b 2. c 3. a 4. a 5. b 6. c 7. d**8.** No, transcription and translation are separated in space and time in a eukaryotic cell, as a result of the eukaryotic cell's nuclear membrane.

9.

| Type of RNA | Functions |
|----------------------------|---|
| Messenger RNA (mRNA) | Carries information specifying amino acid sequences of proteins from DNA to ribosomes |
| Transfer RNA (tRNA) | Serves as translator molecule in protein synthesis; translates mRNA codons into amino acids |
| Ribosomal RNA (rRNA) | Plays catalytic (ribozyme) roles and structural roles in ribosomes |
| Primary transcript | Is a precursor to mRNA, rRNA, or tRNA, before being processed; also, some of the RNA in introns acts as a ribozyme, catalyzing its own splicing |
| Small RNAs in the ribosome | Plays structural and catalytic roles in spliceosomes, the complexes of protein and RNA that splice pre-mRNA |

Chapter 18

Figure Questions

Figure 18.3 As the concentration of tryptophan in the cell falls, eventually there will be none bound to repressor molecules. These will then change into their

inactive shapes and dissociate from the operator, allowing transcription of the operon

to resume. The enzymes for tryptophan synthesis will be made, and they will again begin to synthesize tryptophan in the cell. **Figure 18.11** In both types of cell, the albumin gene enhancer has the three control elements colored yellow, gray, and red. The sequences in the liver and lens cells would be identical, since the cells are in the same organism. **Figure 18.18** Even if the mutant MyoD protein couldn't activate the *myoD* gene, it could still turn on genes for the other proteins in the pathway (other transcription factors, which would turn on the genes for muscle-specific proteins, for example). Therefore, some differentiation would occur. But unless there were other activators that could compensate for the loss of the MyoD protein's activation of the *myoD* gene, the cell would not be able to maintain its differentiated state. **Figure 18.22** Normal Bicoid protein would be made in the anterior end and compensate for the presence of mutant *bicoid* mRNA put into the egg by the mother. Development should be normal, with a head present.

Figure 18.25 The mutation is likely to be recessive because it is more likely to have an effect if both copies of the gene are mutated and code for nonfunctional proteins. If one normal copy of the gene is present, its product could inhibit the cell cycle. (However, there are also known cases of dominant *p53* mutations.)

Figure 18.27 Cancer is a disease in which cell division occurs without its usual regulation. Cell division can be stimulated by growth factors (see Figure 12.18), which bind to cell-surface receptors (see Figure 11.8). Cancer cells evade these normal controls and can often divide in the absence of growth factors (see Figure 12.19). This suggests that the receptor proteins or some other components in a signaling pathway are abnormal in some way (see, for example, the mutant Ras protein in Figure 18.24) or are expressed at abnormal levels, as seen for the receptors in this figure. Under some circumstances in the mammalian body, steroid hormones such as estrogen and progesterone can also promote cell division. These molecules also use cell-signaling pathways, as described in Chapter 11 (see Figure 11.9). Because signaling receptors are involved in triggering cells to undergo cell division, it is not surprising that altered genes encoding these proteins might play a significant role in the development of cancer. Genes might be altered either through a mutation that changes the function of the protein product or a mutation that causes the gene to be expressed at abnormal levels that disrupt the overall regulation of the signaling pathway.

Concept Check 18.1

- Binding by the *trp* corepressor (tryptophan) activates the *trp* repressor, shutting off transcription of the *trp* operon; binding by the *lac* inducer (allolactose) inactivates the *lac* repressor, leading to transcription of the *lac* operon.
- When glucose is scarce, cAMP is bound to CAP and CAP is bound to the promoter, favoring the binding of RNA polymerase. However, in the absence of lactose, the repressor is bound to the operator, blocking RNA polymerase binding to the promoter. Therefore, the operon genes are not transcribed.
- The cell would continuously produce β -galactosidase and the two other enzymes for lactose utilization, even in the absence of lactose, thus wasting cell resources.

Concept Check 18.2

- Histone acetylation is generally associated with gene expression, while DNA methylation is generally associated with lack of expression.
- General transcription factors function in assembling the transcription initiation complex at the promoters for all genes. Specific transcription factors bind to control elements associated with a particular gene and, once bound, either increase (activators) or decrease (repressors) transcription of that gene.
- The three genes should have some similar or identical sequences in the control elements of their enhancers. Because of this similarity, the same specific transcription factors in muscle cells could bind to the enhancers of all three genes and stimulate their expression coordinately.
- Regulation of translation initiation, degradation of the mRNA, activation of the protein (by chemical modification, for example), and protein degradation

Concept Check 18.3

- Both miRNAs and siRNAs are small, single-stranded RNAs that associate with a complex of proteins and then can base-pair with mRNAs that have a complementary sequence. This base pairing leads to either degradation of the mRNA or blockage of its translation. In some yeasts, siRNAs associated with proteins in a different complex can bind back to centromeric chromatin, recruiting enzymes that cause condensation of that chromatin into heterochromatin. Both miRNAs and siRNAs are processed from double-stranded RNA precursors, but have subtle variations in the structure of those precursors.
- The mRNA would persist and be translated into the cell division-promoting protein, and the cell would probably divide. If the intact miRNA is necessary for inhibition of cell division, then division of this cell might be inappropriate. Uncontrolled cell division could lead to formation of a mass of cells (tumor) that prevents proper functioning of the organism and could contribute to the development of cancer.

Concept Check 18.4

- Cells undergo differentiation during embryonic development, becoming different from each other. Therefore, the adult organism is made up of many highly specialized cell types.
- By binding to a receptor on the receiving cell's surface and triggering a signal transduction pathway, involving intracellular molecules such as second messengers and transcription factors that affect gene expression.
- Because their products, made and deposited into the egg by the mother, determine the head and tail ends, as well as the back and belly, of the embryo (and eventually the adult fly).
- The lower cell is synthesizing signaling molecules because the gene encoding them is activated, meaning that the appropriate specific transcription factors are binding to the gene's enhancer. The genes encoding these specific transcription factors are also being expressed in this cell because the transcriptional activators that can turn them on were expressed in the precursor to this

cell. A similar explanation also applies to the cells expressing the receptor proteins. This scenario began with specific cytoplasmic determinants localized in specific regions of the egg. These cytoplasmic determinants were distributed unevenly to daughter cells, resulting in cells going down different developmental pathways.

Concept Check 18.5

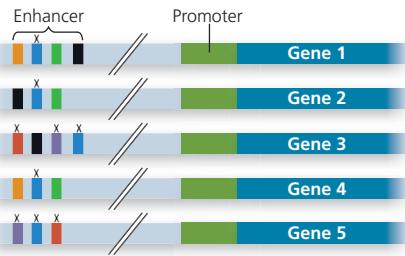
- Apoptosis is signaled by p53 protein when a cell has extensive DNA damage, so apoptosis plays a protective role in eliminating a cell that might contribute to cancer. If mutations in the genes in the apoptotic pathway blocked apoptosis, a cell with such damage could continue to divide and might lead to tumor formation.
- When an individual has inherited an oncogene or a mutant allele of a tumor-suppressor gene
- A cancer-causing mutation in a proto-oncogene usually makes the gene product overactive, whereas a cancer-causing mutation in a tumor-suppressor gene usually makes the gene product nonfunctional.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

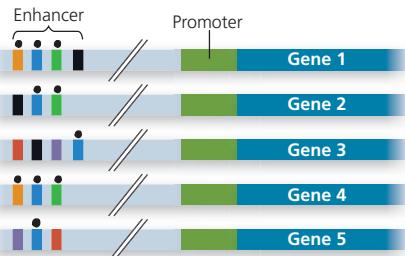
- 18.1** A corepressor and an inducer are both small molecules that bind to the repressor protein in an operon, causing the repressor to change shape. In the case of a corepressor (like tryptophan), this shape change allows the repressor to bind to the operator, blocking transcription. In contrast, an inducer causes the repressor to dissociate from the operator, allowing transcription to begin.
- 18.2** The chromatin must not be tightly condensed because it must be accessible to transcription factors. The appropriate specific transcription factors (activators) must bind to the control elements in the enhancer of the gene, while repressors must not be bound. The DNA must be bent by a bending protein so the activators can contact the mediator proteins and form a complex with general transcription factors at the promoter. Then RNA polymerase must bind and begin transcription.
- 18.3** miRNAs do not "code" for the amino acids of a protein—they are never translated. Each miRNA associates with a group of proteins to form a complex. Binding of the complex to an mRNA with a complementary sequence causes that mRNA to be degraded or blocks its translation. This is considered gene regulation because it controls the amount of a particular mRNA that can be translated into a functional protein.
- 18.4** The first process involves cytoplasmic determinants, including mRNAs and proteins, placed into specific locations in the egg by the mother. The cells that are formed from different regions in the egg during early cell divisions will have different proteins in them, which will direct different programs of gene expression. The second process involves the cell in question responding to signaling molecules secreted by neighboring cells. The signaling pathway in the responding cell also leads to a different pattern of gene expression. The coordination of these two processes results in each cell following a unique pathway in the developing embryo.
- 18.5** The protein product of a proto-oncogene is usually involved in a pathway that stimulates cell division. The protein product of a tumor-suppressor gene is usually involved in a pathway that inhibits cell division.

Test Your Understanding

1. c 2. a 3. b 4. c 5. c 6. d 7. a 8. c 9. b 10. d
11. (a)



The purple, blue, and red activator proteins would be present.
(b)



Only gene 4 would be transcribed.

- (c) In nerve cells, the orange, blue, green, and black activators would have to be present, thus activating transcription of genes 1, 2, and 4. In skin cells, the red, black, purple, and blue activators would have to be present, thus activating genes 3 and 5.

Chapter 19

Figure Questions

- Figure 19.2** Beijerinck might have concluded that the agent was a toxin produced by the plant that was able to pass through a filter but that became more and more

dilute. In this case, he would have concluded that the infectious agent could not replicate.

Figure 19.4

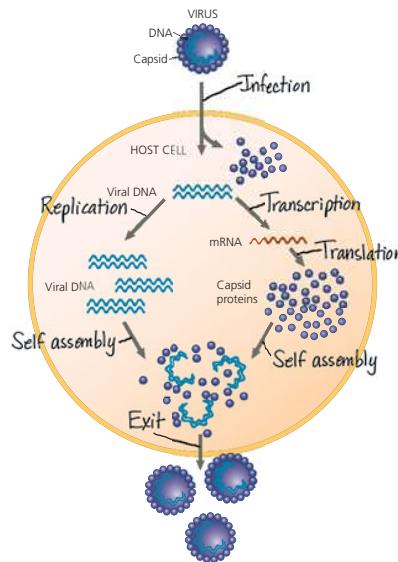


Figure 19.7 Any class V virus, including the viruses that cause influenza (flu), measles, and mumps. **Figure 19.8** The main protein on the cell surface that HIV binds to is called CD4. However, HIV also requires a "co-receptor" which in many cases is a protein called CCR5. HIV binds to both of these proteins together and then is taken into the cell. Researchers discovered this requirement by studying individuals who seemed to be resistant to HIV infection, despite multiple exposures. These individuals turned out to have mutations in the gene that encodes CCR5 such that the protein apparently cannot act as a co-receptor, and so HIV can't enter and infect cells.

Concept Check 19.1

- TMV consists of one molecule of RNA surrounded by a helical array of proteins. The influenza virus has eight molecules of RNA, each surrounded by a helical array of proteins, similar to the arrangement of the single RNA molecule in TMV. Another difference between the viruses is that the influenza virus has an outer envelope and TMV does not.
- The T2 phages were an excellent choice for use in the Hershey-Chase experiment because they consist of only DNA surrounded by a protein coat, and DNA and protein were the two candidates for macromolecules that carried genetic information. Hershey and Chase were able to radioactively label each type of molecule alone and follow it during separate infections of *E. coli* cells with T2. Only the DNA entered the bacterial cell during infection, and only labeled DNA showed up in some of the progeny phage. Hershey and Chase concluded that the DNA must carry the genetic information necessary for the phage to reprogram the cell and produce progeny phages.

Concept Check 19.2

- Lytic phages can only carry out lysis of the host cell, whereas lysogenic phages may either lyse the host cell or integrate into the host chromosome. In the latter case, the viral DNA (prophage) is simply replicated along with the host chromosome. Under certain conditions, a prophage may exit the host chromosome and initiate a lytic cycle.
- Both the viral RNA polymerase and the RNA polymerase in Figure 17.9 synthesize an RNA molecule complementary to a template strand. However, the RNA polymerase in Figure 17.9 uses one of the strands of the DNA double helix as a template, whereas the viral RNA polymerase uses the RNA of the viral genome as a template.
- HIV is called a retrovirus because it synthesizes DNA using its RNA genome as a template. This is the reverse ("retro") of the usual DNA → RNA information flow.
- There are many steps that could be interfered with: binding of the virus to the cell, reverse transcriptase function, integration into the host cell chromosome, genome synthesis (in this case, transcription of RNA from the integrated provirus), assembly of the virus inside the cell, and budding of the virus. (Many of these, if not all, are targets of actual medical strategies to block progress of the infection in HIV-infected people.)

Concept Check 19.3

- Mutations can lead to a new strain of a virus that can no longer be effectively fought by the immune system, even if an animal had been exposed to the original strain; a virus can jump from one species to a new host; and a rare virus can spread if a host population becomes less isolated.
- In horizontal transmission, a plant is infected from an external source of virus, which could enter through a break in the plant's epidermis due to damage by herbivores or other agents. In vertical transmission, a plant inherits viruses from its parent either via infected seeds (sexual reproduction) or via an infected cutting (asexual reproduction).
- Humans are not within the host range of TMV, so they can't be infected by the virus. (TMV can't bind human cells and infect them.)

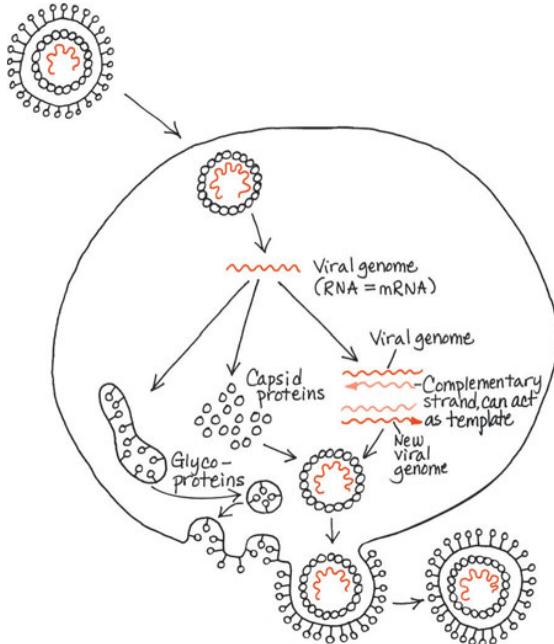
Summary of Key Concepts Questions

19.1 Viruses are generally considered nonliving, because they are not capable of replicating outside of a host cell and are unable to carry out the energy-transforming reactions of metabolism. To replicate and carry out metabolism, they depend completely on host enzymes and resources. **19.2** Single-stranded RNA viruses require an RNA polymerase that can make RNA using an RNA template. (Cellular RNA polymerases make RNA using a DNA template.) Retroviruses require reverse transcriptases to make DNA using an RNA template. (Once the first DNA strand has been made, the same enzyme can promote synthesis of the second DNA strand.) **19.3** The mutation rate of RNA viruses is higher than that of DNA viruses because RNA polymerase has no proofreading function, so errors in replication are not corrected. Their higher mutation rate means that RNA viruses change faster than DNA viruses, leading to their being able to have an altered host range and to evade immune defenses in possible hosts.

Test Your Understanding

1. c 2. d 3. c 4. c 5. b

6. As shown below, the viral genome would be translated into capsid proteins and envelope glycoproteins directly, rather than after a complementary RNA copy was made. A complementary RNA strand would still be made, however, that could be used as a template for many new copies of the viral genome.



Chapter 20

Figure Questions

Figure 20.6

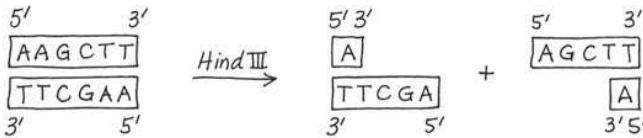
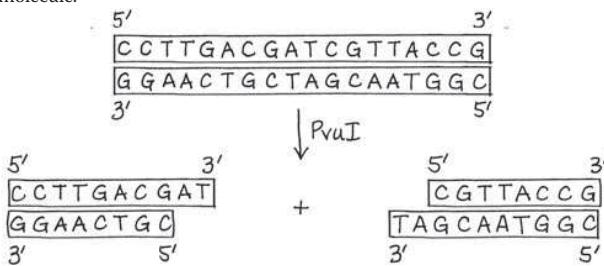


Figure 20.14 Crossing over, which causes recombination, is a random event. The chance of crossing over occurring between two loci increases as the distance between them increases. The SNP is located very close to an unknown disease-causing allele, and therefore crossing over rarely occurs between the SNP and the allele, so the SNP is a genetic marker indicating the presence of the particular allele. **Figure 20.16** None of the eggs with the transplanted nuclei from the four-cell embryo at the upper left would have developed into a tadpole. Also, the result might include only some of the tissues of a tadpole, which might differ, depending on which nucleus was transplanted. (This assumes that there was some way to tell the four cells apart, as one can in some frog species.) **Figure 20.21** Using converted iPS cells would not carry the same risk, which is its major advantage. Because the donor cells would come from the patient, they would be perfectly matched. The patient's immune system would recognize them as "self" cells and would not mount an attack (which is what leads to rejection). On the other hand, cells that are rapidly dividing might carry a risk of inducing some type of tumor or contributing to development of cancer.

Concept Check 20.1

1. The covalent sugar-phosphate bonds of the DNA strands 2. Yes, *Pvu*I will cut the molecule.



3. Some human genes are too large to be incorporated into bacterial plasmids. Bacterial cells lack the means to process RNA transcripts into mRNA, and even if the need for RNA processing is avoided by using cDNA, bacteria lack enzymes to catalyze the post-translational processing that many human proteins require to function properly. 4. During the replication of the ends of linear DNA molecules (see Figure 16.20), an RNA primer is used at the 5' end of each new strand. The RNA must be replaced by DNA nucleotides, but DNA polymerase is incapable of starting from scratch at the 5' end of a new DNA strand. During PCR, the primers are made of DNA nucleotides already, so they don't need to be replaced—they just remain as part of each new strand. Therefore, there is no problem with end replication during PCR, and the fragments don't shorten with each replication.

Concept Check 20.2

1. In RT-PCR, the primers must base-pair with their target sequences in the DNA mixture, locating one specific region among many. In DNA microarray analysis, the labeled probe binds only to the specific target sequence due to complementary nucleic acid hybridization (DNA-DNA hybridization). 2. As a researcher interested in cancer development, you would want to study genes represented by spots that are green or red because these are genes for which the expression level differs between the two types of tissues. Some of these genes may be expressed differently as a result of cancer, while others might play a role in causing cancer, so both would be of interest.

Concept Check 20.3

1. The state of chromatin modification in the nucleus from the intestinal cell was undoubtedly less similar to that of a nucleus from a fertilized egg, explaining why many fewer of these nuclei were able to be reprogrammed. In contrast, the chromatin in a nucleus from a cell at the four-cell stage would have been much more like that of a nucleus in a fertilized egg and therefore much more easily programmed to direct development. 2. No, primarily because of subtle (and perhaps not so subtle) differences in their environments 3. The carrot cell has much more potential. The cloning experiment shows that an individual carrot cell can generate all the tissues of an adult plant. The muscle cell, on the other hand, will always remain a muscle cell because of its genetic program (it expresses the *myoD* gene, which ensures continued differentiation). The muscle cell is like other fully differentiated animal cells: It will remain fully differentiated on its own unless it is reprogrammed into an iPS cell using the new techniques described here. (This would be quite difficult to accomplish because a muscle cell has multiple nuclei.)

Concept Check 20.4

1. Stem cells continue to reproduce themselves, ensuring that the corrective gene product will continue to be made. 2. Herbicide resistance, pest resistance, disease resistance, salinity resistance, drought resistance, and delayed ripening 3. Because hepatitis A is an RNA virus, you could isolate RNA from the blood and try to detect copies of hepatitis A RNA by RT-PCR. You would first reverse-transcribe the blood mRNA into cDNA and then use PCR to amplify the cDNA, using primers specific to hepatitis A sequences. If you then ran the products on an electrophoretic gel, the presence of a band of the appropriate size would support your hypothesis.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

20.1 A plasmid vector and a source of foreign DNA to be cloned are both cut with the same restriction enzyme, generating restriction fragments with sticky ends. These fragments are mixed together, ligated, and reintroduced into bacterial cells. The plasmid has a gene for resistance to an antibiotic. That antibiotic is added to the host cells, and only cells that have taken up a plasmid will grow. (Another technique allows researchers to select only the cells that have a recombinant plasmid, rather than the original plasmid without an inserted gene.) **20.2** The genes that are expressed in a given tissue or cell type determine the proteins (and noncoding RNAs) that are the basis of the structure and functions of that tissue or cell type. Understanding which groups of interacting genes establish particular structures and allow certain functions will help us learn how the parts of an organism work together and help us treat diseases that occur when faulty gene expression leads to malfunctioning tissues. **20.3** Cloning a mouse involves transplanting a nucleus from a differentiated mouse cell into a mouse egg cell that has had its own nucleus removed. Fertilizing the egg cell and promoting its development into an embryo in a surrogate mother results in a mouse that is genetically identical to the mouse that donated the nucleus. In this case, the differentiated nucleus has been reprogrammed by factors in the egg cytoplasm. Mouse ES cells are generated from inner

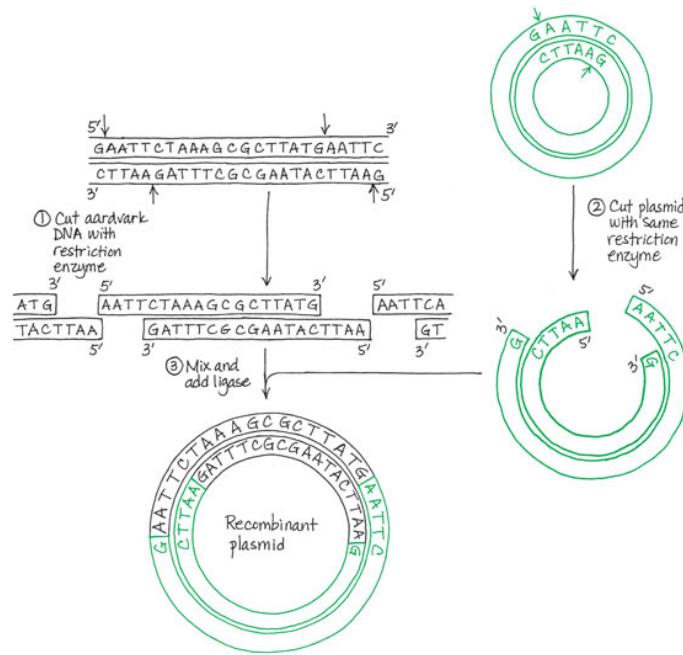
cells in mouse blastocysts, so in this case the cells are “naturally” reprogrammed by the process of reproduction and development. (Cloned mouse embryos can also be used as a source of ES cells.) iPS cells can be generated without the use of embryos from a differentiated adult mouse cell, by adding certain transcription factors into the cell. In this case, the transcription factors are reprogramming the cells to become pluripotent. **20.4** First, the disease must be caused by a single gene, and the molecular basis of the problem must be understood. Second, the cells that are going to be introduced into the patient must be cells that will integrate into body tissues and continue to multiply (and provide the needed gene product). Third, the gene must be able to be introduced into the cells in question in a safe way, as there have been instances of cancer resulting from some gene therapy trials. (Note that this will require testing the procedure in mice; moreover, the factors that determine a safe vector are not yet well understood. Maybe one of you will go on to solve this problem!)

Test Your Understanding

1. d 2. b 3. c 4. b 5. c 6. b 7. a 8. b

9. You would use PCR to amplify the gene. This could be done from genomic DNA. Alternatively, mRNA could be isolated from lens cells and reverse-transcribed by reverse transcriptase to make cDNA. This cDNA could then be used for PCR.

10.



Chapter 21

Figure Questions

Figure 21.2 In stage 2 of this figure, the order of the fragments relative to each other is not known and will be determined later by computer. **Figure 21.8** The transposon would be cut out of the DNA at the original site rather than copied, so the figure would show the original stretch of DNA without the transposon after the mobile transposon had been cut out. **Figure 21.10** The RNA transcripts extending from the DNA in each transcription unit are shorter on the left and longer on the right. This means that RNA polymerase must be starting on the left end of the unit and moving toward the right.

Figure 21.13

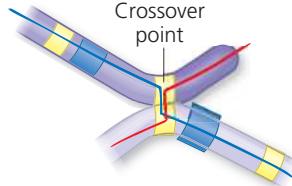


Figure 21.14 Pseudogenes are nonfunctional. They could have arisen by any mutations in the second copy that made the gene product unable to function. Examples would be base changes that introduce stop codons in the sequence, alter amino acids, or change a region of the gene promoter so that the gene can no longer be expressed. **Figure 21.15** At position 5, there is an R (arginine) in lysozyme and a K (lysine) in α -lactalbumin; both of these are basic amino acids.

At position 16, there is a G (glutamic acid) in lysozyme and a D (aspartic acid) in α -lactalbumin; both of these are acidic. **Figure 21.16** Let's say a transposable element (TE) existed in the intron to the left of the indicated EGF exon in the EGF gene, and the same TE was present in the intron to the right of the indicated F exon in the fibronectin gene. During meiotic recombination, these TEs could cause nonsister chromatids on homologous chromosomes to pair up incorrectly, as seen in Figure 21.13. One gene might end up with an F exon next to an EGF exon. Further mistakes in pairing over many generations might result in these two exons being separated from the rest of the gene and placed next to a single or duplicated K exon. In general, the presence of repeated sequences in introns and between genes facilitates these processes because it allows incorrect pairing of nonsister chromatids, leading to novel exon combinations. **Figure 21.18** Since you know that chimpanzees do not speak but humans do, you'd probably want to know how many amino acid differences there are between the human wild-type FOXP2 protein and that of the chimpanzee and whether these changes affect the function of the protein. (As we explain later in the text, there are two amino acid differences.) You know that humans with mutations in this gene have severe language impairment. You would want to learn more about the human mutations by checking whether they affect the same amino acids in the gene product that the chimpanzee sequence differences affect. If so, those amino acids might play an important role in the function of the protein in language. Going further, you could analyze the differences between the chimpanzee and mouse FOXP2 proteins. You might ask: Are they more similar than the chimpanzee and human proteins? (It turns out that the chimpanzee and mouse proteins have only one amino acid difference and thus are more similar than the chimpanzee and human proteins, which have two differences, and also more similar than the human and mouse proteins, which have three differences.)

Concept Check 21.1

1. In the whole-genome shotgun approach, short fragments are generated by cutting the genome with multiple restriction enzymes. These fragments are cloned and sequenced and then ordered by computer programs that identify overlapping regions (see Figure 21.2).

Concept Check 21.2

1. The Internet allows centralization of databases such as GenBank and software resources such as BLAST, making them freely accessible. Having all the data in a central database, easily accessible on the Internet, minimizes the possibility of errors and of researchers working with different data. It streamlines the process of science, since all researchers are able to use the same software programs, rather than each having to obtain their own, possibly different, software. It speeds up dissemination of data and ensures as much as possible that errors are corrected in a timely fashion. These are just a few answers; you can probably think of more.

2. Cancer is a disease caused by multiple factors. To focus on a single gene or a single defect would ignore other factors that may influence the cancer and even the behavior of the single gene being studied. The systems approach, because it takes into account many factors at the same time, is more likely to lead to an understanding of the causes and most useful treatments for cancer. 3. Some of the transcribed region is accounted for by introns. The rest is transcribed into noncoding RNAs, including small RNAs, such as microRNAs (miRNAs) or siRNAs. These RNAs help regulate gene expression by blocking translation, causing degradation of mRNA, binding to the promoter and repressing transcription, or causing remodeling of chromatin structure. The longer noncoding RNAs may also contribute to gene regulation or to chromatin remodeling. 4. Genome-wide association studies use the systems biology approach in that they consider the correlation of many single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) with particular diseases, such as heart disease and diabetes, in an attempt to find patterns of SNPs that correlate with each disease.

Concept Check 21.3

1. Alternative splicing of RNA transcripts from a gene and post-translational processing of polypeptides 2. The total number of completed genomes is found by clicking on “Complete Projects”; the number of completed genomes for each domain is indicated at the top of this page. The number of genomes “In Progress” is included under “Incomplete Projects”; click that link to see the number of incomplete genomes, broken down by domain. You can also see the breakdown for genomes “In Progress.” (Note: You can click on the “Size” column and the table will be re-sorted by genome size. Scroll down to get an idea of relative sizes of genomes in the three domains. Remember, though, that most of the sequenced genomes are bacterial.) 3. Prokaryotes are generally smaller cells than eukaryotic cells, and they reproduce by binary fission. The evolutionary process involved is natural selection for more quickly reproducing cells: The faster they can replicate their DNA and divide, the more likely they will be able to dominate a population of prokaryotes. The less DNA they have to replicate, then, the faster they will reproduce.

Concept Check 21.4

1. The number of genes is higher in mammals, and the amount of noncoding DNA is greater. Also, the presence of introns in mammalian genes makes them larger, on average, than prokaryotic genes. 2. In the copy-and-paste transposon mechanism and in retrotransposition 3. In the rRNA gene family, identical transcription units for all three different RNA products are present in long arrays, repeated one after the other. The large number of copies of the rRNA genes enable organisms to produce the rRNA for enough ribosomes to carry out active protein synthesis, and the single transcription unit for the three rRNAs ensures that the relative amounts of the different rRNA molecules produced are correct—every time one rRNA is made, a copy of each of the other two is made as well. Rather

than numerous identical units, each globin gene family consists of a relatively small number of nonidentical genes. The differences in the globin proteins encoded by these genes result in production of hemoglobin molecules adapted to particular developmental stages of the organism. **4.** The exons would be classified as exons (1.5%); the enhancer region containing the distal control elements, the region closer to the promoter containing the proximal control elements, and the promoter itself would be classified as regulatory sequences (5%); and the introns would be classified as introns (20%).

Concept Check 21.5

1. If meiosis is faulty, two copies of the entire genome can end up in a single cell. Errors in crossing over during meiosis can lead to one segment being duplicated while another is deleted. During DNA replication, slippage backward along the template strand can result in segment duplication. **2.** For either gene, a mistake in crossing over during meiosis could have occurred between the two copies of that gene, such that one ended up with a duplicated exon. (The other copy would have ended up with a deleted exon.) This could have happened several times, resulting in the multiple copies of a particular exon in each gene. **3.** Homologous transposable elements scattered throughout the genome provide sites where recombination can occur between different chromosomes. Movement of these elements into coding or regulatory sequences may change expression of genes. Transposable elements also can carry genes with them, leading to dispersion of genes and in some cases different patterns of expression. Transport of an exon during transposition and its insertion into a gene may add a new functional domain to the originally encoded protein, a type of exon shuffling. (For any of these changes to be heritable, they must happen in germ cells, cells that will give rise to gametes.) **4.** Because more offspring are born to women who have this inversion, it must provide some advantage during the process of reproduction and development. Because proportionally more offspring have this inversion, we would expect it to persist and spread in the population. (In fact, evidence in the study allowed the researchers to conclude that it has been increasing in proportion in the population. You'll learn more about population genetics in the next unit.)

Concept Check 21.6

1. Because both humans and macaques are primates, their genomes are expected to be more similar than the macaque and mouse genomes are. The mouse lineage diverged from the primate lineage before the human and macaque lineages diverged. **2.** Homeotic genes differ in their *nonhomeobox* sequences, which determine the interactions of homeotic gene products with other transcription factors and hence which genes are regulated by the homeotic genes. These *nonhomeobox* sequences differ in the two organisms, as do the expression patterns of the homeobox genes. **3.** *Alu* elements must have undergone transposition more actively in the human genome for some reason. Their increased numbers may have then allowed more recombination errors in the human genome, resulting in more or different duplications. The divergence of the organization and content of the two genomes presumably made the chromosomes of each genome less homologous to those of the other, thus accelerating divergence of the two species by making matings less and less likely to result in fertile offspring.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

21.1 One focus of the Human Genome Project was to improve sequencing technology in order to speed up the process. During the project, many advances in sequencing technology allowed faster reactions, which were therefore less expensive. **21.2** The most significant finding is that more than 75% of the human genome appears to be transcribed at some point in at least one of the cell types studied. Also, at least 80% of the genome contains an element that is functional, participating in gene regulation or maintaining chromatin structure in some way. The project was expanded to include other species to further investigate the functions of these transcribed DNA elements. It is necessary to carry out this type of analysis on the genomes of species that can be used in laboratory experiments. **21.3** (a) In general, bacteria and archaea have smaller genomes, lower numbers of genes, and higher gene density than eukaryotes. (b) Among eukaryotes, there is no apparent systematic relationship between genome size and phenotype. The number of genes is often lower than would be expected from the size of the genome—in other words, the gene density is often lower in larger genomes. (Humans are an example.) **21.4** Transposable element-related sequences can move from place to place in the genome, and a subset of these sequences make a new copy of themselves when they do so. Thus, it is not surprising that they make up a significant percentage of the genome, and this percentage might be expected to increase over evolutionary time. **21.5** Chromosomal rearrangements within a species lead to some individuals having different chromosomal arrangements. Each of these individuals could still undergo meiosis and produce gametes, and fertilization involving gametes with different chromosomal arrangements could result in viable offspring. However, during meiosis in the offspring, the maternal and paternal chromosomes might not be able to pair up, causing gametes with incomplete sets of chromosomes to form. Most often, when zygotes are produced from such gametes, they do not survive. Ultimately, a new species could form if two different chromosomal arrangements became prevalent within a population and individuals could mate successfully only with other individuals having the same arrangement. **21.6** Comparing the genomes of two closely related species can reveal information about more recent evolutionary events, perhaps events that resulted in the distinguishing characteristics of the two species. Comparing the genomes of very distantly related species can tell us about evolutionary events that occurred a very long time ago. For example, genes that are shared between two distantly related species must have arisen before the two species diverged.

Test Your Understanding

1. b 2. a 3. c

4. **1.** ATETI...PKSSD...TSSTT...NARRD
- 2.** ATETI...PKSSE...TSS~~T~~...**N**ARRD
- 3.** ATETI...PKSSD...TSSTT...NARRD
- 4.** ATETI...PKSSD...TSS~~N~~...**S**ARRD
- 5.** ATETI...PKSSD...TSSTT...NARRD
- 6.** VTETI...PKSSD...TSSTT...**N**ARRD

(a) Lines 1, 3, and 5 are the C, G, R species. (b) Line 4 is the human sequence. See the above figure for the differences between the human and C, G, R sequences—the underlined amino acids at which the human sequence has an N where the C, G, R sequences have a T, and an S where C, G, R have an N. (c) Line 6 is the orangutan sequence. (d) See the above figure. There is one amino acid difference between the mouse (the circled E on line 2) and the C, G, R species (which have a D in that position). There are three amino acid differences between the mouse and the human. (The boxed E, T, and N in the mouse sequence are instead D, N, and S, respectively, in the human sequence.) (e) Because only one amino acid difference arose during the 60–100 million years since the mouse and C, G, R species diverged, it is somewhat surprising that two additional amino acid differences resulted during the 6 million years since chimpanzees and humans diverged. This indicates that the *FOXP2* gene has been evolving faster in the human lineage than in the lineages of other primates.

Chapter 22

Figure Questions

Figure 22.6 The cactus-eater is more closely related to the seed-eater; Figure 1.22 shows that they share a more recent common ancestor (a seed-eater) than the cactus-eater shares with the insect-eater. **Figure 22.8** The common ancestor lived more than 5.5 million years ago. **Figure 22.12** The colors and body forms of these mantids allow them to blend into their surroundings, providing an example of how organisms are well matched to life in their environments. The mantids also share features with one another (and with all other mantids), such as six legs, grasping forelimbs, and large eyes. These shared features illustrate another key observation about life: the unity that results from descent from a common ancestor. Over time, as these mantids diverged from a common ancestor, they accumulated different adaptations that made them well suited for life in their different environments. Eventually, these differences became large enough that new species were formed, thus contributing to the great diversity of life. **Figure 22.13** These results show that being reared from the egg stage on one plant species or the other did not result in the adult having a beak length appropriate for that host; instead, adult beak lengths were determined primarily by the population from which the eggs were obtained. Because an egg from a balloon vine population likely had long-beaked parents, while an egg from a goldenrain tree population likely had short-beaked parents, these results indicate that beak length is an inherited trait. **Figure 22.14** Both strategies should increase the time that it takes *S. aureus* to become resistant to a new drug. If a drug that harms *S. aureus* does not harm other bacteria, natural selection will not favor resistance to that drug in the other species. This would decrease the chance that *S. aureus* would acquire resistance genes from other bacteria—thus slowing the evolution of resistance. Similarly, selection for resistance to a drug that slows the growth but does not kill *S. aureus* is much weaker than selection for resistance to a drug that kills *S. aureus*—again slowing the evolution of resistance. **Figure 22.17** Based on this evolutionary tree, crocodiles are more closely related to birds than to lizards because they share a more recent common ancestor with birds (ancestor **5**) than with lizards (ancestor **4**). **Figure 22.20** Hind limb structure changed first. *Rodhocetus* lacked flukes, but its pelvic bones and hind limbs had changed substantially from how those bones were shaped and arranged in *Pakicetus*. For example, in *Rodhocetus*, the pelvis and hind limbs appear to be oriented for paddling, whereas they were oriented for walking in *Pakicetus*.

Concept Check 22.1

1. Hutton and Lyell proposed that geologic events in the past were caused by the same processes operating today, at the same gradual rate. This principle suggested that Earth must be much older than a few thousand years, the age that was widely accepted at that time. Hutton's and Lyell's ideas also stimulated Darwin to reason that the slow accumulation of small changes could ultimately produce the profound changes documented in the fossil record. In this context, the age of Earth was important to Darwin, because unless Earth was very old, he could not envision how there would have been enough time for evolution to occur. **2.** By this criterion, Cuvier's explanation of the fossil record and Lamarck's hypothesis of evolution are both scientific. Cuvier thought that species did not evolve over time. He also suggested that sudden, catastrophic events caused extinctions in particular areas and that such regions were later repopulated by a different set of species that immigrated from other areas. These assertions can be tested against the fossil record, and his assertion that species do not evolve has been demonstrated to be incorrect. With respect to Lamarck, his principle of use and disuse can be used to make testable predictions for fossils of groups such as whale ancestors as they adapted to a new habitat. Lamarck's principle of use and disuse and his associated principle of the inheritance of acquired characteristics can also be tested directly in living organisms; these principles have been shown to be incorrect.

Concept Check 22.2

1. Organisms share characteristics (the unity of life) because they share common ancestors; the great diversity of life occurs because new species have repeatedly

formed when descendant organisms gradually adapted to different environments, becoming different from their ancestors. **2.** The fossil mammal species (or its ancestors) would most likely have colonized the Andes from within South America, whereas ancestors of mammals currently found in African mountains would most likely have colonized those mountains from other parts of Africa. As a result, the Andes fossil species would share a more recent common ancestor with South American mammals than with mammals in Africa. Thus, for many of its traits, the fossil mammal species would probably more closely resemble mammals that live in South American jungles than mammals that live on African mountains. It is also possible, however, that the fossil mammal species could resemble the African mountain mammals by convergent evolution (even though they were only distantly related to one another). **3.** As long as the white phenotype (encoded by the genotype *pp*) continues to be favored by natural selection, the frequency of the *p* allele will likely increase over time in the population. If the proportion of white individuals increases relative to purple individuals, the frequency of the recessive *p* allele will also increase relative to that of the *P* allele, which only appears in purple individuals (some of which also carry a *p* allele).

Concept Check 22.3

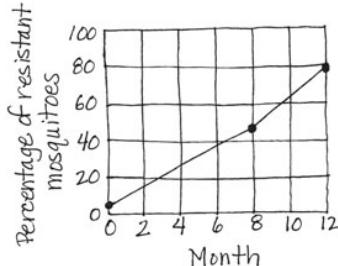
1. An environmental factor such as a drug does not create new traits, such as drug resistance, but rather selects for traits among those that are already present in the population. **2.** (a) Despite their different functions, the forelimbs of different mammals are structurally similar because they all represent modifications of a structure found in the common ancestor. (b) This is a case of convergent evolution. The similarities between the sugar glider and flying squirrel indicate that similar environments selected for similar adaptations despite different ancestry. **3.** At the time that dinosaurs originated, Earth's landmasses formed a single large continent, Pangaea. Because many dinosaurs were large and mobile, it is likely that early members of these groups lived on many different parts of Pangaea. When Pangaea broke apart, fossils of these organisms would have moved with the rocks in which they were deposited. As a result, we would predict that fossils of early dinosaurs would have a broad geographic distribution (this prediction has been upheld).

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

Concept 22.1 Darwin thought that descent with modification occurred as a gradual, steplike process. The age of Earth was important to him because if Earth were only a few thousand years old (as conventional wisdom suggested), there wouldn't have been sufficient time for major evolutionary change. **Concept 22.2** All species have the potential to overreproduce—that is, to produce more offspring than can be supported by the environment. This ensures that there will be what Darwin called a “struggle for existence” in which many of the offspring are eaten, starved, diseased, or unable to reproduce for a variety of other reasons. Members of a population exhibit a range of heritable variations, some of which make it likely that their bearers will leave more offspring than other individuals (for example, the bearer may escape predators more effectively or be more tolerant of the physical conditions of the environment). Over time, natural selection resulting from factors such as predators, lack of food, or the physical conditions of the environment can increase the proportion of individuals with favorable traits in a population (evolutionary adaptation). **Concept 22.3** The hypothesis that cetaceans originated from a terrestrial mammal and are closely related to even-toed ungulates is supported by several lines of evidence. For example, fossils document that early cetaceans had hind limbs, as expected for organisms that descended from a land mammal; these fossils also show that cetacean hind limbs became reduced over time. Other fossils show that early cetaceans had a type of ankle bone that is otherwise found only in even-toed ungulates, providing strong evidence that even-toed ungulates are the land mammals to which cetaceans are most closely related. DNA sequence data also indicate that even-toed ungulates are the land mammals to which cetaceans are most closely related.

Test Your Understanding

1. b 2. d 3. c 4. b 5. a
7. (a)



(b) The rapid rise in the percentage of mosquitoes resistant to DDT was most likely caused by natural selection in which mosquitoes resistant to DDT could survive and reproduce while other mosquitoes could not. (c) In India—where DDT resistance first appeared—natural selection would have caused the frequency of resistant mosquitoes to increase over time. If resistant mosquitoes then migrated from India (for example, transported by wind or in planes, trains, or ships) to other parts of the world, the frequency of DDT resistance would increase there as well.

Chapter 23

Figure Questions

Figure 23.4 The genetic code is redundant, meaning that more than one codon can specify the same amino acid. As a result, a substitution at a particular site in a coding region of the *Adh* gene might change the codon but not the translated amino

acid, and thus not the resulting protein encoded by the gene. One way an insertion in an exon would not affect the gene produced is if it occurs in an untranslated region of the exon. (This is the case for the insertion at location 1,703.)

Figure 23.8 The predicted frequencies are 36% *C^RC^R*, 48% *C^RC^W*, and 16% *C^WC^W*.

Figure 23.13 Directional selection. Goldenrain tree has smaller fruit than does the native host, balloon vine. Thus, in soapberry bug populations feeding on goldenrain tree, bugs with shorter beaks had an advantage, resulting in directional selection for shorter beak length. **Figure 23.16** Crossing a single female's eggs with both an SC and an LC male's sperm allowed the researchers to directly compare the effects of the males' contribution to the next generation, since both batches of offspring had the same maternal contribution. This isolation of the male's impact enabled researchers to draw conclusions about differences in genetic “quality” between the SC and LC males. **Figure 23.17** Under prolonged low-oxygen conditions, some of the red blood cells of a heterozygote may sickle, leading to harmful effects. This does not occur in individuals with two wild-type hemoglobin alleles, suggesting that there may be selection against heterozygotes in malaria-free regions (where heterozygote advantage does not occur). However, since heterozygotes are healthy under most conditions, selection against them is unlikely to be strong.

Concept Check 23.1

1. Within a population, genetic differences among individuals provide the raw material on which natural selection and other mechanisms can act. Without such differences, allele frequencies could not change over time—and hence the population could not evolve. **2.** Many mutations occur in somatic cells, which do not produce gametes and so are lost when the organism dies. Of mutations that do occur in cell lines that produce gametes, many do not have a phenotypic effect on which natural selection can act. Others have a harmful effect and are thus unlikely to increase in frequency because they decrease the reproductive success of their bearers. **3.** Its genetic variation (whether measured at the level of the gene or at the level of nucleotide sequences) would probably drop over time. During meiosis, crossing over and the independent assortment of chromosomes produce many new combinations of alleles. In addition, a population contains a vast number of possible mating combinations, and fertilization brings together the gametes of individuals with different genetic backgrounds. Thus, via crossing over, independent assortment of chromosomes, and fertilization, sexual reproduction reshuffles alleles into fresh combinations each generation. Without sexual reproduction, the rate of forming new combinations of alleles would be vastly reduced, causing the overall amount of genetic variation to drop.

Concept Check 23.2

1. Each individual has two alleles, so the total number of alleles is 1,400. To calculate the frequency of allele *A*, note that each of the 85 individuals of genotype *AA* has two *A* alleles, each of the 320 individuals of genotype *Aa* has one *A* allele, and each of the 295 individuals of genotype *aa* has zero *A* alleles. Thus, the frequency (*p*) of allele *A* is

$$p = \frac{(2 \times 85) + (1 \times 320) + (0 \times 295)}{1,400} = 0.35$$

There are only two alleles (*A* and *a*) in our population, so the frequency of allele *a* must be *q* = 1 − *p* = 0.65. **2.** Because the frequency of allele *a* is 0.45, the frequency of allele *A* must be 0.55. Thus, the expected genotype frequencies are *p*² = 0.3025 for genotype *AA*, 2*pq* = 0.495 for genotype *Aa*, and *q*² = 0.2025 for genotype *aa*. **3.** There are 120 individuals in the population, so there are 240 alleles. Of these, there are 124 *V* alleles—32 from the 16 *VV* individuals and 92 from the 92 *Vv* individuals. Thus, the frequency of the *V* allele is *p* = 124/240 = 0.52; hence, the frequency of the *v* allele is *q* = 0.48. Based on the Hardy-Weinberg equation, if the population were not evolving, the frequency of genotype *VV* should be *p*² = 0.52 × 0.52 = 0.27; the frequency of genotype *Vv* should be 2*pq* = 2 × 0.52 × 0.48 = 0.5; and the frequency of genotype *vv* should be *q*² = 0.48 × 0.48 = 0.23. In a population of 120 individuals, these expected genotype frequencies lead us to predict that there would be 32 *VV* individuals (0.27 × 120), 60 *Vv* individuals (0.5 × 120), and 28 *vv* individuals (0.23 × 120). The actual numbers for the population (16 *VV*, 92 *Vv*, 12 *vv*) deviate from these expectations (fewer homozygotes and more heterozygotes than expected). This indicates that the population is not in Hardy-Weinberg equilibrium and hence may be evolving at this locus.

Concept Check 23.3

1. Natural selection is more “predictable” in that it alters allele frequencies in a nonrandom way: It tends to increase the frequency of alleles that increase the organism's reproductive success in its environment and decrease the frequency of alleles that decrease the organism's reproductive success. Alleles subject to genetic drift increase or decrease in frequency by chance alone, whether or not they are advantageous. **2.** Genetic drift results from chance events that cause allele frequencies to fluctuate at random from generation to generation; within a population, this process tends to decrease genetic variation over time. Gene flow is the transfer of alleles between populations, a process that can introduce new alleles to a population and hence may increase its genetic variation (albeit slightly, since rates of gene flow are often low). **3.** Selection is not important at this locus; furthermore, the populations are not small, and hence the effects of genetic drift should not be pronounced. Gene flow is occurring via the movement of pollen and seeds. Thus, allele and genotype frequencies in these populations should become more similar over time as a result of gene flow.

Concept Check 23.4

1. Zero, because fitness includes reproductive contribution to the next generation, and a sterile mule cannot produce offspring. **2.** Although both gene flow and genetic drift can increase the frequency of advantageous alleles in a population, they

can also decrease the frequency of advantageous alleles or increase the frequency of harmful alleles. Only natural selection *consistently* results in an increase in the frequency of alleles that enhance survival or reproduction. Thus, natural selection is the only mechanism that consistently leads to adaptive evolution.

3. The three modes of natural selection (directional, stabilizing, and disruptive) are defined in terms of the selective advantage of different *phenotypes*, not different genotypes. Thus, the type of selection represented by heterozygote advantage depends on the phenotype of the heterozygotes. In this question, because heterozygous individuals have a more extreme phenotype than either homozygote, heterozygote advantage represents directional selection.

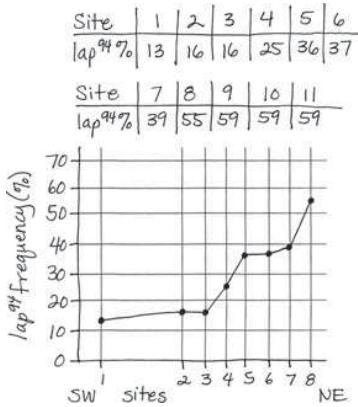
Summary of Key Concepts Questions

23.1 Much of the nucleotide variability at a genetic locus occurs within introns. Nucleotide variation at these sites typically does not affect the phenotype because introns do not code for the protein product of the gene. (Note: In certain circumstances, it is possible that a change in an intron could affect RNA splicing and ultimately have some phenotypic effect on the organism, but such mechanisms are not covered in this introductory text.) There are also many variable nucleotide sites within exons. However, most of the variable sites within exons reflect changes to the DNA sequence that do not change the sequence of amino acids encoded by the gene (and hence may not affect the phenotype). **23.2** No, this is not an example of circular reasoning. Calculating p and q from observed genotype frequencies does not imply that those genotype frequencies must be in Hardy-Weinberg equilibrium. Consider a population that has 195 individuals of genotype AA , 10 of genotype Aa , and 195 of genotype aa . Calculating p and q from these values yields $p = q = 0.5$. Using the Hardy-Weinberg equation, the predicted equilibrium frequencies are $p^2 = 0.25$ for genotype AA , $2pq = 0.5$ for genotype Aa , and $q^2 = 0.25$ for genotype aa . Since there are 400 individuals in the population, these predicted genotype frequencies indicate that there should be 100 AA individuals, 200 Aa individuals, and 100 aa individuals—numbers that differ greatly from the values that we used to calculate p and q . **23.3** It is unlikely that two such populations would evolve in similar ways. Since their environments are very different, the alleles favored by natural selection would probably differ between the two populations. Although genetic drift may have important effects in each of these small populations, drift causes unpredictable changes in allele frequencies, so it is unlikely that drift would cause the populations to evolve in similar ways. Both populations are geographically isolated, suggesting that little gene flow would occur between them (again making it less likely that they would evolve in similar ways). **23.4** Compared to males, it is likely that the females of such species would be larger, more colorful, endowed with more elaborate ornamentation (for example, a large morphological feature such as the peacock's tail), and more apt to engage in behaviors intended to attract mates or prevent other members of their sex from obtaining mates.

Test Your Understanding

1. d 2. c 3. b 4. a 5. c

7. The frequency of the lap^{94} allele increases as one moves from southwest to northeast across Long Island Sound. The frequency of the lap^{94} allele is higher at sites 9–11 (open ocean) than it is at sites 1–7 (within the Sound); the northeast edge of the Sound (site 8) has about the same frequency of the lap^{94} allele as do the open ocean sites.



A hypothesis that explains the shape of the graph and accounts for the observations stated in the question is that the frequency of the lap^{94} allele at different sites results from an interaction between selection and gene flow. Under this hypothesis, in the southwest portion of the Sound, salinity is relatively low, and selection against the lap^{94} allele is strong. Moving toward the northeast and into the open ocean, where salinity is relatively high, selection favors a high frequency of the lap^{94} allele. However, because mussel larvae disperse long distances, gene flow prevents the lap^{94} allele from becoming fixed in the open ocean or from declining to zero in the southwestern portion of Long Island Sound.

Chapter 24

Figure Questions

Figure 24.7 If this had not been done, the strong preference of “starch flies” and “maltose flies” to mate with like-adapted flies could have occurred simply because the flies could detect (for example, by sense of smell) what their potential mates had

eaten as larvae—and they preferred to mate with flies that had a similar smell to their own. **Figure 24.11** In murky waters where females distinguish colors poorly, females of each species might mate often with males of the other species. Hence, since hybrids between these species are viable and fertile, the gene pools of the two species could become more similar over time. **Figure 24.12** The graph suggests there has been gene flow of some fire-bellied toad alleles into the range of the yellow-bellied toad. Otherwise, all individuals located to the left of the hybrid zone portion of the graph would have allele frequencies close to 1. **Figure 24.13** Because the populations had only just begun to diverge from one another at this point in the process, it is likely that any existing barriers to reproduction would weaken over time. **Figure 24.18** Over time, the chromosomes of the experimental hybrids came to resemble those of *H. anomalous*. This occurred even though conditions in the laboratory differed greatly from conditions in the field, where *H. anomalous* is found, suggesting that selection for laboratory conditions was not strong. Thus, it is unlikely that the observed rise in the fertility of the experimental hybrids was due to selection for life under laboratory conditions. **Figure 24.19** The presence of *M. cardinalis* plants that carry the *M. lewisi yup* allele would make it more likely that bumblebees would transfer pollen between the two monkey flower species. As a result, we would expect the number of hybrid offspring to increase.

Concept Check 24.1

- (a) All except the biological species concept can be applied to both asexual and sexual species because they define species on the basis of characteristics other than the ability to reproduce. In contrast, the biological species concept can be applied only to sexual species. (b) The easiest species concept to apply in the field would be the morphological species concept because it is based only on the appearance of the organism. Additional information about its ecological habits, evolutionary history, and reproduction is not required. **2.** Because these birds live in fairly similar environments and can breed successfully in captivity, the reproductive barrier in nature is probably prezygotic; given the species' differences in habitat preference, this barrier could result from habitat isolation.

Concept Check 24.2

- In allopatric speciation, a new species forms while in geographic isolation from its parent species; in sympatric speciation, a new species forms in the absence of geographic isolation. Geographic isolation greatly reduces gene flow between populations, whereas ongoing gene flow is more likely in sympatric populations. As a result, sympatric speciation is less common than allopatric speciation. **2.** Gene flow between subsets of a population that live in the same area can be reduced in a variety of ways. In some species—especially plants—changes in chromosome number can block gene flow and establish reproductive isolation in a single generation. Gene flow can also be reduced in sympatric populations by habitat differentiation (as seen in the apple maggot fly, *Rhagoletis*) and sexual selection (as seen in Lake Victoria cichlids). **3.** Allopatric speciation would be less likely to occur on an island near a mainland than on an isolated island of the same size. The reason we expect this result is that continued gene flow between mainland populations and those on a nearby island reduces the chance that enough genetic divergence will take place for allopatric speciation to occur. **4.** If all of the homologs failed to separate during anaphase I of meiosis, some gametes would end up with an extra set of chromosomes (and others would end up with no chromosomes). If a gamete with an extra set of chromosomes fused with a normal gamete, a triploid would result; if two gametes with an extra set of chromosomes fused with each other, a tetraploid would result.

Concept Check 24.3

- Hybrid zones are regions in which members of different species meet and mate, producing some offspring of mixed ancestry. Such regions can be viewed as “natural laboratories” in which to study speciation because scientists can directly observe factors that cause (or fail to cause) reproductive isolation. **2.** (a) If hybrids consistently survived and reproduced poorly compared with the offspring of intra-specific matings, reinforcement could occur. If it did, natural selection would cause prezygotic barriers to reproduction between the parent species to strengthen over time, decreasing the production of unfit hybrids and leading to a completion of the speciation process. (b) If hybrid offspring survived and reproduced as well as the offspring of intraspecific matings, indiscriminate mating between the parent species would lead to the production of large numbers of hybrid offspring. As these hybrids mated with each other and with members of both parent species, the gene pools of the parent species could fuse over time, reversing the speciation process.

Concept Check 24.4

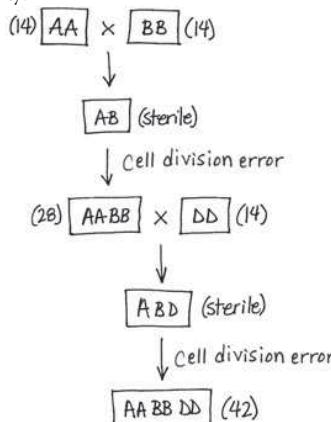
- The time between speciation events includes (1) the length of time that it takes for populations of a newly formed species to begin diverging reproductively from one another and (2) the time it takes for speciation to be complete once this divergence begins. Although speciation can occur rapidly once populations have begun to diverge from one another, it may take millions of years for that divergence to begin. **2.** Investigators transferred alleles at the *yup* locus (which influences flower color) from each parent species to the other. *M. lewisi* plants with an *M. cardinalis yup* allele received many more visits from hummingbirds than usual; hummingbirds usually pollinate *M. cardinalis* but avoid *M. lewisi*. Similarly, *M. cardinalis* plants with an *M. lewisi yup* allele received many more visits from bumblebees than usual; bumblebees usually pollinate *M. lewisi* and avoid *M. cardinalis*. Thus, alleles at the *yup* locus can influence pollinator choice, which in these species provides the primary barrier to interspecific mating. Nevertheless, the experiment does not prove that the *yup* locus alone controls barriers to reproduction between *M. lewisi* and *M. cardinalis*; other genes might enhance the effect of the *yup* locus (by modifying flower color) or cause entirely different barriers to reproduction (for example, gametic isolation or a postzygotic barrier). **3.** Crossing over. If crossing over did not occur, each chromosome in an experimental hybrid would remain as in the F_1 generation: composed entirely of DNA from one parent species or the other.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

24.1 According to the biological species concept, a species is a group of populations whose members interbreed and produce viable, fertile offspring; thus, gene flow occurs between populations of a species. In contrast, members of different species do not interbreed and hence no gene flow occurs between their populations. Overall, then, in the biological species concept, species can be viewed as designated by the *absence* of gene flow—making gene flow of central importance to the biological species concept. **24.2** Sympatric speciation can be promoted by factors such as polyploidy, sexual selection, and habitat shifts, all of which can reduce gene flow between the subpopulations of a larger population. But such factors can also occur in allopatric populations and hence can also promote allopatric speciation. **24.3** If the hybrids are selected against, the hybrid zone could persist if individuals from the parent species regularly travel into the zone, where they mate to produce hybrid offspring. If hybrids are not selected against, there is no cost to the continued production of hybrids, and large numbers of hybrid offspring may be produced. However, natural selection for life in different environments may keep the gene pools of the two parent species distinct, thus preventing the loss (by fusion) of the parent species and once again causing the hybrid zone to be stable over time. **24.4** As the goatsbeard plant, Bahamas mosquitofish, and apple maggot fly illustrate, speciation continues to happen today. A new species can begin to form whenever gene flow is reduced between populations of the parent species. Such reductions in gene flow can occur in many ways: A new, geographically isolated population may be founded by a few colonists; some members of the parent species may begin to utilize a new habitat; and sexual selection may isolate formerly connected populations or subpopulations. These and many other such events are happening today.

Test Your Understanding

1. b 2. c 3. b 4. a 5. d 6. c 7. d
8. Here is one possibility:



Chapter 25

Figure Questions

Figure 25.2 Proteins are almost always composed of the same 20 amino acids shown in Figure 5.14. However, many other amino acids could potentially form in this or any other experiment. For example, any molecule that had an R group other than those listed in Figure 5.14 yet still contained an α carbon, an amino group, and carboxyl group would be an amino acid—yet it would not be one of the 20 amino acids commonly found in nature. **Figure 25.6** Because uranium-238 has a half-life of 4.5 billion years, the x -axis would be relabeled (in billions of years) as 4.5, 9, 13.5, and 18. **Figure 25.11** You should have circled the node, shown in the tree diagram at approximately 580 million years ago (mya), that leads to the echinoderm/chordate lineage and to the lineage that gave rise to brachiopods, annelids, molluscs, and arthropods. Although the 580 mya date is estimated, this common ancestor must be at least as old as any of its descendants. Since fossil molluscs date to about 560 mya, the common ancestor represented by the circled branch point must be at least 560 million years old. **Figure 25.16** The Australian plate's current direction of movement is roughly similar to the northeasterly direction the continent traveled over the past 65 million years. **Figure 25.26** The coding sequence of the *Pitx1* gene would differ between the marine and lake populations, but patterns of gene expression would not.

Concept Check 25.1

1. The hypothesis that conditions on early Earth could have permitted the synthesis of organic molecules from inorganic ingredients **2**. In contrast to random mingling of molecules in an open solution, segregation of molecular systems by membranes could concentrate organic molecules, assisting biochemical reactions. **3**. Today, genetic information usually flows from DNA to RNA, as when the DNA sequence of a gene is used as a template to synthesize the mRNA encoding a particular protein. However, the life cycle of retroviruses such as HIV shows that genetic information can flow in the reverse direction (from RNA to DNA). In these viruses, the enzyme reverse transcriptase uses RNA as a template for DNA synthesis, suggesting that a similar enzyme could have played a key role in the transition from an RNA world to a DNA world.

Concept Check 25.2

1. 22,920 years (four half-lives: $5,730 \times 4$) **2**. The fossil record shows that different groups of organisms dominated life on Earth at different points in time and

that many organisms once alive are now extinct; specific examples of these points can be found in Figure 25.5. The fossil record also indicates that new groups of organisms can arise via the gradual modification of previously existing organisms, as illustrated by fossils that document the origin of mammals from their cynodont ancestors. **3**. The discovery of such a (hypothetical) fossil organism would indicate that aspects of our current understanding of the origin of mammals are not correct because mammals are thought to have originated much more recently (see Figure 25.7). For example, such a discovery could suggest that the dates of previous fossil discoveries are not correct or that the lineages shown in Figure 25.7 shared features with mammals but were not their direct ancestors. Such a discovery would also suggest that radical changes in multiple aspects of the skeletal structure of organisms could arise suddenly—an idea that is not supported by the known fossil record.

Concept Check 25.3

1. Free oxygen attacks chemical bonds and can inhibit enzymes and damage cells. As a result, prokaryotes that had thrived in anaerobic environments would have survived and reproduced poorly in oxygen-rich environments, driving many species to extinction. **2**. All eukaryotes have mitochondria or remnants of these organelles, but not all eukaryotes have plastids. **3**. A fossil record of life today would include many organisms with hard body parts (such as vertebrates and many marine invertebrates), but might not include some species we are very familiar with, such as those that have small geographic ranges and/or small population sizes (for example, endangered species such as the giant panda, tiger, and several rhinoceros species).

Concept Check 25.4

1. The theory of plate tectonics describes the movement of Earth's continental plates, which alters the physical geography and climate of Earth, as well as the extent to which organisms are geographically isolated. Because these factors affect extinction and speciation rates, plate tectonics has a major impact on life on Earth. **2**. Mass extinctions; major evolutionary innovations; the diversification of another group of organisms (which can provide new sources of food); migration to new locations where few competitor species exist **3**. In theory, fossils of both common and rare species would be present right up to the time of the catastrophic event, then disappear. Reality is more complicated because the fossil record is not perfect. So the most recent fossil for a species might be millions of years before the mass extinction—even though the species did not become extinct *until* the mass extinction. This complication is especially likely for rare species because few of their fossils will form and be discovered. Hence, for many rare species, the fossil record would not document that the species was alive immediately before the extinction (even if it was).

Concept Check 25.5

1. Heterochrony can cause a variety of morphological changes. For example, if the onset of sexual maturity changes, a retention of juvenile characteristics (paedomorphosis) may result. Paedomorphosis can be caused by small genetic changes that result in large changes in morphology, as seen in the axolotl salamander.

- 2**. In animal embryos, *Hox* genes influence the development of structures such as limbs and feeding appendages. As a result, changes in these genes—or in the regulation of these genes—are likely to have major effects on morphology. **3**. From genetics, we know that gene regulation is altered by how well transcription factors bind to noncoding DNA sequences called control elements. Thus, if changes in morphology are often caused by changes in gene regulation, portions of noncoding DNA that contain control elements are likely to be strongly affected by natural selection.

Concept Check 25.6

1. Complex structures do not evolve all at once, but in increments, with natural selection selecting for adaptive variants of the earlier versions. **2**. Although the myxoma virus is highly lethal, initially some of the rabbits are resistant (0.2% of infected rabbits are not killed). Thus, assuming resistance is an inherited trait, we would expect the rabbit population to show a trend for increased resistance to the virus. We would also expect the virus to show an evolutionary trend toward reduced lethality. We would expect this trend because a rabbit infected with a less lethal virus would be more likely to live long enough for a mosquito to bite it and hence potentially transmit the virus to another rabbit. (A virus that kills its rabbit host before a mosquito transmits the virus to another rabbit dies with its host.)

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

Concept 25.1 Particles of montmorillonite clay may have provided surfaces on which organic molecules became concentrated and hence were more likely to react with one another. Montmorillonite clay particles may also have facilitated the transport of key molecules, such as short strands of RNA, into vesicles. These vesicles can form spontaneously from simple precursor molecules, “reproduce” and “grow” on their own, and maintain internal concentrations of molecules that differ from those in the surrounding environment. These features of vesicles represent key steps in the emergence of protocells and (ultimately) the first living cells. **Concept 25.2** One challenge is that organisms do not use radioisotopes that have long half-lives to build their bones or shells. As a result, fossils older than 75,000 years cannot be dated directly. Fossils are often found in sedimentary rock, but those rocks typically contain sediments of different ages, again posing a challenge when trying to date old fossils. To circumvent these challenges, geologists date layers of volcanic rock that surround old fossils and that use radioisotopes with long half-lives. This approach provides minimum and maximum estimates for the ages of fossils sandwiched between two layers of volcanic rock. **Concept 25.3** The “Cambrian explosion” refers to a relatively short interval of time (535–525 million years ago) during which large forms of many present-day animal phyla first appear in the fossil record. The evolutionary changes that

occurred during this time, such as the appearance of large predators and well-defended prey, were important because they set the stage for many of the key events in the history of life over the last 500 million years. **Concept 25.4** The broad evolutionary changes documented by the fossil record reflect the rise and fall of major groups of organisms. In turn, the rise or fall of any particular group results from a balance between speciation and extinction rates: A group increases in size when the rate at which its members produce new species is greater than the rate at which its member species are lost to extinction, while a group shrinks in size if extinction rates are greater than speciation rates. **Concept 25.5** A change in the sequence or regulation of a developmental gene can produce major morphological changes. In some cases, such morphological changes may enable organisms to perform new functions or live in new environments—thus potentially leading to an adaptive radiation and the formation of a new group of organisms. **Concept 25.6** Evolutionary change results from interactions between organisms and their current environments. No goal is involved in this process. As environments change over time, the features of organisms favored by natural selection may also change. When this happens, what once may have seemed like a “goal” of evolution (for example, improvements in the function of a feature previously favored by natural selection) may cease to be beneficial or may even be harmful.

Test Your Understanding

1. b 2. a 3. d 4. b 5. c 6. c 7. a

Chapter 26

Figure Questions

Figure 26.4 The branching pattern of the tree indicates that the badger and the wolf share a common ancestor that is more recent than the ancestor these two animals share with the leopard. **Figure 26.5** The new version (shown below) does not alter any of the evolutionary relationships shown in Figure 26.5. For example, B and C remain sister taxa, taxon A is still as closely related to taxon B as it is to taxon C, and so on.

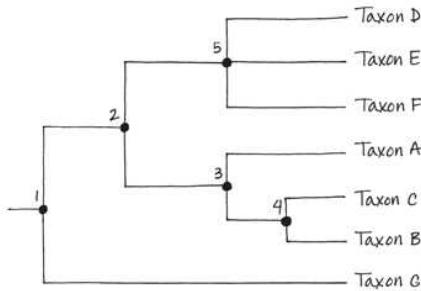
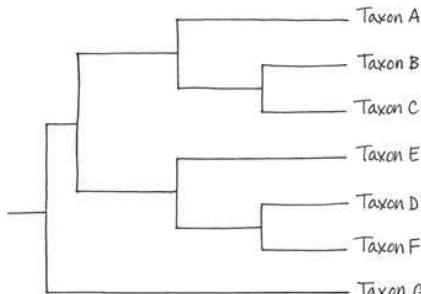


Figure 26.6 Unknown 1b (a portion of sample 1) and Unknowns 9–13 all would have to be located on the branch of the tree that currently leads to Minke (Southern Hemisphere) and Unknowns 1a and 2–8. **Figure 26.11** You should have circled the branch point that is drawn farthest to the left (the common ancestor of all taxa shown). Both cetaceans and seals descended from terrestrial lineages of mammals, indicating that the cetacean-seal common ancestor lacked a streamlined body form and hence would not be part of the cetacean-seal group. **Figure 26.12** You should have circled the frog, turtle, and leopard lineages, along with their most recent common ancestor. **Figure 26.16** The lizard and snake lineage is the most basal taxon shown (closest to the root of the tree). Among the descendants of the common ancestor indicated by the blue dot, the crocodilian lineage is the most basal. **Figure 26.21** This tree indicates that the sequences of rRNA and other genes in mitochondria are most closely related to those of proteobacteria, while the sequences of chloroplast genes are most closely related to those of cyanobacteria. These gene sequence relationships are what would be predicted from endosymbiont theory, which posits that both mitochondria and chloroplasts originated as engulfed prokaryotic cells.

Concept Check 26.1

- We are classified the same from the domain level to the class level; both the leopard and human are mammals. Leopards belong to order Carnivora, whereas humans do not.
- The tree in (c) shows a different pattern of evolutionary relationships. In (c), C and B are sister taxa, whereas C and D are sister taxa in (a) and (b).

3.

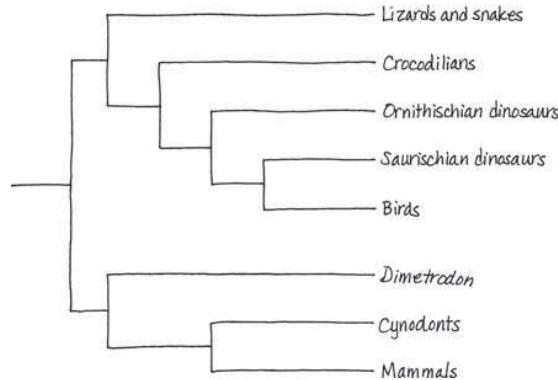


Concept Check 26.2

- (a) Analogy, since porcupines and cacti are not closely related and since most other animals and plants do not have similar structures; (b) homology, since cats and humans are both mammals and have homologous forelimbs, of which the hand and paw are the lower part; (c) analogy, since owls and hornets are not closely related and since the structure of their wings is very different.
- Species B and C are more likely to be closely related. Small genetic changes (as between species B and C) can produce divergent physical appearances, but if many genes have diverged greatly (as in species A and B), then the lineages have probably been separate for a long time.

Concept Check 26.3

- No; hair is a shared ancestral character common to all mammals and thus is not helpful in distinguishing different mammalian subgroups.
- The principle of maximum parsimony states that the hypothesis about nature we investigate first should be the simplest explanation found to be consistent with the facts. Actual evolutionary relationships may differ from those inferred by parsimony owing to complicating factors such as convergent evolution.
- The traditional classification provides a poor match to evolutionary history, thus violating the basic principle of cladistics—that classification should be based on common descent. Both birds and mammals originated from groups traditionally designated as reptiles, making reptiles (as traditionally delineated) a paraphyletic group. These problems can be addressed by removing *Dimetrodon* and cynodonts from the reptiles and by regarding birds as a group of reptiles (specifically, as a group of dinosaurs).



Concept Check 26.6

- The kingdom Monera included bacteria and archaea, but we now know that these organisms are in separate domains. Kingdoms are subsets of domains, so a single kingdom (like Monera) that includes taxa from different domains is not valid.
- Because of horizontal gene transfer, some genes in eukaryotes are more closely related to bacteria, while others are more closely related to archaea; thus, depending on which genes are used, phylogenetic trees constructed from DNA data can yield conflicting results.
- ```

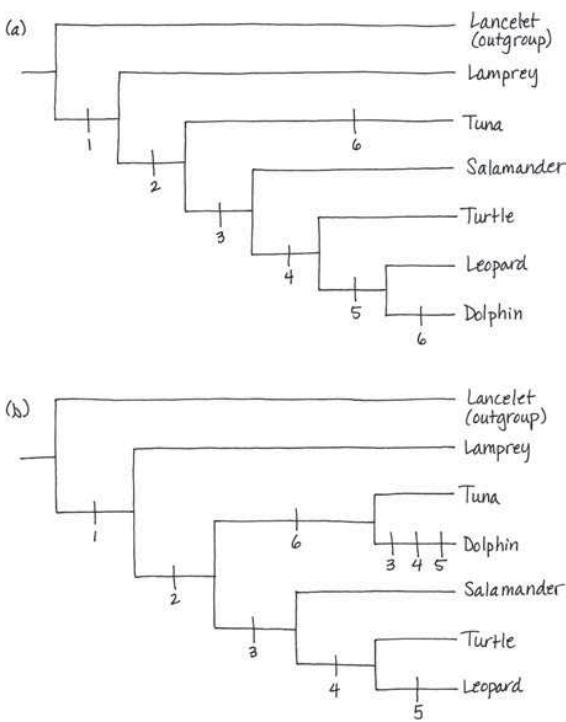
graph LR
 Root1 --- Node1(())
 Node1 --- Node2(())
 Node1 --- Node3(())
 Node2 --- Node4(())
 Node2 --- Node5(())
 Node3 --- Node6(())
 Node3 --- Node7(())
 Node4 --- Node8(())
 Node4 --- Node9(())
 Node5 --- Node10(())
 Node5 --- Node11(())
 Node6 --- Node12(())
 Node6 --- Node13(())
 Node7 --- Node14(())
 Node7 --- Node15(())
 Node8 --- Node16(())
 Node8 --- Node17(())
 Node9 --- Node18(())
 Node9 --- Node19(())
 Node10 --- Node20(())
 Node10 --- Node21(())
 Node11 --- Node22(())
 Node11 --- Node23(())
 Node12 --- Node24(())
 Node12 --- Node25(())
 Node13 --- Node26(())
 Node13 --- Node27(())
 Node14 --- Node28(())
 Node14 --- Node29(())
 Node15 --- Node30(())
 Node15 --- Node31(())
 Node16 --- Node32(())
 Node16 --- Node33(())
 Node17 --- Node34(())
 Node17 --- Node35(())
 Node18 --- Node36(())
 Node18 --- Node37(())
 Node19 --- Node38(())
 Node19 --- Node39(())
 Node20 --- Node40(())
 Node20 --- Node41(())
 Node21 --- Node42(())
 Node21 --- Node43(())
 Node22 --- Node44(())
 Node22 --- Node45(())
 Node23 --- Node46(())
 Node23 --- Node47(())
 Node24 --- Node48(())
 Node24 --- Node49(())
 Node25 --- Node50(())
 Node25 --- Node51(())
 Node26 --- Node52(())
 Node26 --- Node53(())
 Node27 --- Node54(())
 Node27 --- Node55(())
 Node28 --- Node56(())
 Node28 --- Node57(())
 Node29 --- Node58(())
 Node29 --- Node59(())
 Node30 --- Node60(())
 Node30 --- Node61(())
 Node31 --- Node62(())
 Node31 --- Node63(())
 Node32 --- Node64(())
 Node32 --- Node65(())
 Node33 --- Node66(())
 Node33 --- Node67(())
 Node34 --- Node68(())
 Node34 --- Node69(())
 Node35 --- Node70(())
 Node35 --- Node71(())
 Node36 --- Node72(())
 Node36 --- Node73(())
 Node37 --- Node74(())
 Node37 --- Node75(())
 Node38 --- Node76(())
 Node38 --- Node77(())
 Node39 --- Node78(())
 Node39 --- Node79(())
 Node40 --- Node80(())
 Node40 --- Node81(())
 Node41 --- Node82(())
 Node41 --- Node83(())
 Node42 --- Node84(())
 Node42 --- Node85(())
 Node43 --- Node86(())
 Node43 --- Node87(())
 Node44 --- Node88(())
 Node44 --- Node89(())
 Node45 --- Node90(())
 Node45 --- Node91(())
 Node46 --- Node92(())
 Node46 --- Node93(())
 Node47 --- Node94(())
 Node47 --- Node95(())
 Node48 --- Node96(())
 Node48 --- Node97(())
 Node49 --- Node98(())
 Node49 --- Node99(())
 Node50 --- Node100(())
 Node50 --- Node101(())
 Node51 --- Node102(())
 Node51 --- Node103(())
 Node52 --- Node104(())
 Node52 --- Node105(())
 Node53 --- Node106(())
 Node53 --- Node107(())
 Node54 --- Node108(())
 Node54 --- Node109(())
 Node55 --- Node110(())
 Node55 --- Node111(())
 Node56 --- Node112(())
 Node56 --- Node113(())
 Node57 --- Node11
```

### Summary of Key Concepts Questions

**26.1** The fact that humans and chimpanzees are sister species indicates that we share a more recent common ancestor with chimpanzees than we do with any other living primate species. But that does not mean that humans evolved from chimpanzees, or vice versa; instead, it indicates that both humans and chimpanzees are descendants of that common ancestor. **26.2** Homologous characters result from shared ancestry. As organisms diverge over time, some of their homologous characters will also diverge. The homologous characters of organisms that diverged long ago typically differ more than do the homologous characters of organisms that diverged more recently. As a result, differences in homologous characters can be used to infer phylogeny. In contrast, analogous characters result from convergent evolution, not shared ancestry, and hence can give misleading estimates of phylogeny. **26.3** All features of organisms arose at some point in the history of life. In the group in which a new feature first arose, that feature is a shared derived character that is unique to that clade. The group in which each shared derived character first appeared can be determined, and the resulting nested pattern can be used to infer evolutionary history. **26.4** Orthologous genes should be used; for such genes, the homology results from speciation and hence reflects evolutionary history. **26.5** A key assumption of molecular clocks is that nucleotide substitutions occur at fixed rates and hence the number of nucleotide differences between two DNA sequences is proportional to the time since the sequences diverged from each other. Some limitations of molecular clocks: No gene marks time with complete precision; natural selection can favor certain DNA changes over others; nucleotide substitution rates can change over long periods of time (causing molecular clock estimates of when events in the distant past occurred to be highly uncertain); and the same gene can evolve at different rates in different organisms. **26.6** Genetic data indicated that many prokaryotes differed as much from each other as they did from eukaryotes. This indicated that organisms should be grouped into three “super-kingdoms,” or domains (Archaea, Bacteria, Eukarya). These data also indicated that the previous kingdom Monera (which had contained all the prokaryotes) did not make biological sense and should be abandoned. Later genetic and morphological data also indicated that the former kingdom Protista (which had primarily contained single-celled organisms) should be abandoned because some protists are more closely related to plants, fungi, or animals than they are to other protists.

### Test Your Understanding

1. a 2. c 3. b 4. c 5. d 6. a 7. d  
9.



(c) The tree in (a) requires seven evolutionary changes, while the tree in (b) requires nine evolutionary changes. Thus, the tree in (a) is more parsimonious, since it requires fewer evolutionary changes.

## Chapter 27

### Figure Questions

**Figure 27.10** It is likely that the expression or sequence of genes that affect glucose metabolism may have changed; genes for metabolic processes no longer needed by the cell also may have changed. **Figure 27.11** Transduction results in horizontal gene transfer when the host and recipient cells are members of different species. **Figure 27.15** Eukarya **Figure 27.17** Thermophiles live in very hot environments, so it is likely that their enzymes can continue to function normally at much higher temperatures than can the enzymes of other organisms. At low temperatures, however, the enzymes of thermophiles may not function as well as the enzymes of other organisms. **Figure 27.18** From the graph, plant uptake can be estimated as 0.7, 0.6, and 0.95 mg K<sup>+</sup> for strains 1, 2, and 3, respectively. These values average to 0.75 mg K<sup>+</sup>. If bacteria had no effect, the average plant uptake of K<sup>+</sup> for strains 1, 2, and 3 should be close to 0.5 mg K<sup>+</sup>, the value observed for plants grown in bacteria-free soil.

### Concept Check 27.1

1. Adaptations include the capsule (shields prokaryotes from the host's immune system) and endospores (enable cells to survive harsh conditions and to revive when the environment becomes favorable). 2. Prokaryotic cells lack the complex compartmentalization associated with the membrane-enclosed organelles of eukaryotic cells. Prokaryotic genomes have much less DNA than eukaryotic genomes, and most of this DNA is contained in a single ring-shaped chromosome located in the nucleoid rather than within a true membrane-enclosed nucleus. In addition, many prokaryotes also have plasmids, small ring-shaped DNA molecules containing a few genes. 3. Plastids such as chloroplasts are thought to have evolved from an endosymbiotic photosynthetic prokaryote. More specifically, the phylogenetic tree shown in Figure 26.21 indicates that plastids are closely related to cyanobacteria. Hence, we can hypothesize that the thylakoid membranes of chloroplasts resemble those of cyanobacteria because chloroplasts evolved from a cyanobacterium endosymbiont.

### Concept Check 27.2

1. Prokaryotes can have extremely large population sizes, in part because they often have short generation times. The large number of individuals in prokaryotic populations makes it likely that in each generation there will be many individuals that have new mutations at any particular gene, thereby adding considerable genetic diversity to the population. 2. In transformation, naked, foreign DNA from the environment is taken up by a bacterial cell. In transduction, phages carry bacterial genes from one bacterial cell to another. In conjugation, bacterial cell directly transfers plasmid or chromosomal DNA to another cell via a mating bridge that temporarily connects the two cells. 3. The population that includes individuals capable of conjugation would probably be more successful, since some of its members could form recombinant cells whose new gene combinations might be advantageous in a novel environment. 4. Yes. Genes for antibiotic resistance could be transferred (by transformation, transduction, or conjugation) from the nonpathogenic bacterium to a pathogenic bacterium; this could make the pathogen an even greater threat to human health. In general, transformation, transduction, and conjugation tend to increase the spread of resistance genes.

### Concept Check 27.3

1. A phototroph derives its energy from light, while a chemotroph gets its energy from chemical sources. An autotroph derives its carbon from CO<sub>2</sub>, HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>, or related compounds, while a heterotroph gets its carbon from organic nutrients such as glucose. Thus, there are four nutritional modes: photoautotrophic, photoheterotrophic (unique to prokaryotes), chemoautotrophic (unique to prokaryotes), and chemoheterotrophic. 2. Chemoheterotrophy; the bacterium must rely on chemical sources of energy, since it is not exposed to light, and it must be a heterotroph if it requires a source of carbon other than CO<sub>2</sub> (or a related compound, such as HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>). 3. If humans could fix nitrogen, we could build proteins using atmospheric N<sub>2</sub> and hence would not need to eat high-protein foods such as meat, fish, or soy. Our diet would, however, need to include a source of carbon, along with minerals and water. Thus, a typical meal might consist of carbohydrates as a carbon source, along with fruits and vegetables to provide essential minerals (and additional carbon).

### Concept Check 27.4

1. Molecular systematic studies indicate that organisms once classified as bacteria are more closely related to eukaryotes and belong in a domain of their own: Archaea. Such studies have also shown that horizontal gene transfer is common and plays an important role in the evolution of prokaryotes. By not requiring that organisms be cultured in the laboratory, metagenomic studies have revealed an immense diversity of previously unknown prokaryotic species. Over time, the ongoing discovery of new species by metagenomic analyses may alter our understanding of prokaryotic phylogeny greatly. 2. At present, all known methanogens are archaea in the clade Euryarchaeota; this suggests that this unique metabolic pathway probably arose in ancestral species within Euryarchaeota. Since Bacteria and Archaea have been separate evolutionary lineages for billions of years, the discovery of a methanogen from the domain Bacteria would suggest that adaptations that enabled the use of CO<sub>2</sub> to oxidize H<sub>2</sub> may have evolved twice—once in Archaea (within Euryarchaeota) and once in Bacteria. (It is also possible that a newly discovered bacterial methanogen could have acquired the genes for this metabolic pathway by horizontal gene transfer from a methanogen in domain Archaea. However, horizontal gene transfer is not a likely explanation because of the large number of genes involved and because gene transfers between species in different domains are rare.)

### Concept Check 27.5

1. Although prokaryotes are small, their large numbers and metabolic abilities enable them to play key roles in ecosystems by decomposing wastes, recycling chemicals, and affecting the concentrations of nutrients available to other organisms. 2. Cyanobacteria produce oxygen when water is split in the light reactions of photosynthesis. The Calvin cycle incorporates CO<sub>2</sub> from the air into organic molecules, which are then converted to sugars.

**Concept Check 27.6**

**1.** Sample answers: eating fermented foods such as yogurt, sourdough bread, or cheese; receiving clean water from sewage treatment; taking medicines produced by bacteria **2.** No. If the poison is secreted as an exotoxin, live bacteria could be transmitted to another person. But the same is true if the poison is an endotoxin—only in this case, the live bacteria that are transmitted may be descendants of the (now-dead) bacteria that produced the poison. **3.** Some of the many different species of prokaryotes that live in the human gut compete with one another for resources (from the food that you eat). Because different prokaryotic species have different adaptations, a change in diet may alter which species can grow most rapidly, thus altering species abundance.

**Summary of Key Concepts Questions**

**27.1** Specific structural features that enable prokaryotes to thrive in diverse environments include their cell walls (which provide shape and protection), flagella (which function in directed movement), and ability to form capsules or endospores (both of which can protect against harsh conditions). Prokaryotes also possess biochemical adaptations for growth in varied conditions, such as those that enable them to tolerate extremely hot or salty environments. **27.2** Many prokaryotic species can reproduce extremely rapidly, and their populations can number in the trillions. As a result, even though mutations are rare, every day many offspring are produced that have new mutations at particular gene loci. In addition, even though prokaryotes reproduce asexually and hence the vast majority of offspring are genetically identical to their parent, the genetic variation of their populations can be increased by transduction, transformation, and conjugation. Each of these (non-reproductive) processes can increase genetic variation by transferring DNA from one cell to another—even among cells that are of different species. **27.3** Prokaryotes have an exceptionally broad range of metabolic adaptations. As a group, prokaryotes perform all four modes of nutrition (photoautotrophy, chemoautotrophy, photoheterotrophy, and chemoheterotrophy), whereas eukaryotes perform only two of these (photoautotrophy and chemoheterotrophy). Prokaryotes are also able to metabolize nitrogen in a wide variety of forms (again unlike eukaryotes), and they frequently cooperate with other prokaryotic cells of the same or different species. **27.4** Phenotypic criteria such as shape, motility, and nutritional mode do not provide a clear picture of the evolutionary history of the prokaryotes. In contrast, molecular data have elucidated relationships among major groups of prokaryotes. Molecular data have also allowed researchers to sample genes directly from the environment; using such genes to construct phylogenies has led to the discovery of major new groups of prokaryotes. **27.5** Prokaryotes play key roles in the chemical cycles on which life depends. For example, prokaryotes are important decomposers, breaking down corpses and waste materials, thereby releasing nutrients to the environment where they can be used by other organisms. Prokaryotes also convert inorganic compounds to forms that other organisms can use. With respect to their ecological interactions, many prokaryotes form life-sustaining mutualisms with other species. In some cases, such as hydrothermal vent communities, the metabolic activities of prokaryotes provide an energy source on which hundreds of other species depend; in the absence of the prokaryotes, the community collapses. **27.6** Human well-being depends on our associations with mutualistic prokaryotes, such as the many species that live in our intestines and digest food that we cannot. Humans also can harness the remarkable metabolic capabilities of prokaryotes to produce a wide range of useful products and to perform key services such as bioremediation. Negative effects of prokaryotes result primarily from bacterial pathogens that cause disease.

**Test Your Understanding**

1. d 2. a 3. c 4. c 5. b 6. a

**Chapter 28****Figure Questions**

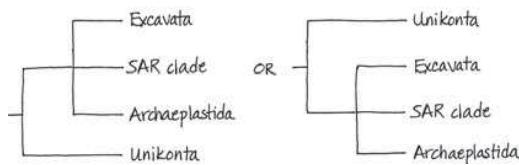
**Figure 28.3** Four. The first (and primary) genome is the DNA located in the chlorarachniophyte nucleus. A chlorarachniophyte also contains remnants of a green alga's nuclear DNA, located in the nucleomorph. Finally, mitochondria and chloroplasts contain DNA from the (different) bacteria from which they evolved. These two prokaryotic genomes comprise the third and fourth genomes contained within a chlorarachniophyte. **Figure 28.13** The sperm cells in the diagram are produced by the asexual (mitotic) division of cells in a single male gametophyte, which was itself produced by the asexual (mitotic) division of a single zoospore. Thus, the sperm cells are all derived from a single zoospore and so are genetically identical to one another. **Figure 28.16** Merozoites are produced by the asexual (mitotic) cell division of haploid sporozoites; similarly, gametocytes are produced by the asexual cell division of merozoites. Hence, it is likely that individuals in these three stages have the same complement of genes and that morphological differences between them result from changes in gene expression. **Figure 28.23** The following stage should be circled: step 6, where a mature cell undergoes mitosis and forms four or more daughter cells. In step 7, the zoospores eventually grow into mature haploid cells, but they do not produce new daughter cells. Likewise, in step 2, a mature cell develops into a gamete, but it does not produce new daughter cells.

**Figure 28.24** If the assumption is correct, then their results indicate that the fusion of the genes for DHFR and TS may be a derived trait shared by members of three supergroups of eukaryotes (Excavata, SAR clade, and Archaeplastida). However, if the assumption is not correct, the presence or absence of the gene fusion may tell little about phylogenetic history. For example, if the genes fused multiple times, groups could share the trait because of convergent evolution rather than common descent. If instead the genes were secondarily split, a group with such a

split could be placed (incorrectly) in Unikonta rather than its correct placement in one of the other three supergroups.

**Concept Check 28.1**

**1.** Sample response: Protists include unicellular, colonial, and multicellular organisms; photoautotrophs, heterotrophs, and mixotrophs; species that reproduce asexually, sexually, or both ways; and organisms with diverse physical forms and adaptations. **2.** Strong evidence shows that eukaryotes acquired mitochondria after a host cell (either an archaean or a cell with archaeal ancestors) first engulfed and then formed an endosymbiotic association with an alpha proteobacterium. Similarly, chloroplasts in red and green algae appear to have descended from a photosynthetic cyanobacterium that was engulfed by an ancient heterotrophic eukaryote. Secondary endosymbiosis also played an important role: Various protist lineages acquired plastids by engulfing unicellular red or green algae. **3.** The modified tree would look as follows:

**Concept Check 28.2**

**1.** Their mitochondria do not have an electron transport chain and so cannot function in aerobic respiration. **2.** Since the unknown protist is more closely related to diplomonads than to euglenids, it must have originated after the diplomonads and parabasalids diverged from the euglenozoans. In addition, since the unknown species has fully functional mitochondria—yet both diplomonads and parabasalids do not—it is likely that the unknown species originated *before* the last common ancestor of the diplomonads and parabasalids.

**Concept Check 28.3**

**1.** Because foram tests are hardened with calcium carbonate, they form long-lasting fossils in marine sediments and sedimentary rocks. **2.** The plastid DNA would likely be more similar to the chromosomal DNA of cyanobacteria based on the well-supported hypothesis that eukaryotic plastids (such as those found in the eukaryotic groups listed) originated by an endosymbiosis event in which a eukaryote engulfed a cyanobacterium. If the plastid is derived from the cyanobacterium, its DNA would be derived from the bacterial DNA. **3.** Figure 13.6b. Algae and plants with alternation of generations have a multicellular haploid stage *and* a multicellular diploid stage. In the other two life cycles, either the haploid stage or the diploid stage is unicellular. **4.** During photosynthesis, aerobic algae produce O<sub>2</sub> and use CO<sub>2</sub>. O<sub>2</sub> is produced as a by-product of the light reactions, while CO<sub>2</sub> is used as an input to the Calvin cycle (the end products of which are sugars). Aerobic algae also perform cellular respiration, which uses O<sub>2</sub> as an input and produces CO<sub>2</sub> as a waste product.

**Concept Check 28.4**

**1.** Many red algae contain a photosynthetic pigment called phycoerythrin, which gives them a reddish color and allows them to carry out photosynthesis in relatively deep coastal water. Also unlike brown algae, red algae have no flagellated stages in their life cycle and must depend on water currents to bring gametes together for fertilization. **2.** *Ulva* contains many cells and its body is differentiated into leaflike blades and a rootlike holdfast. *Caulerpa*'s body is composed of multinucleate filaments without cross-walls, so it is essentially one large cell. **3.** Red algae have no flagellated stages in their life cycle and hence must depend on water currents to bring their gametes together. This feature of their biology might increase the difficulty of reproducing on land. In contrast, the gametes of green algae are flagellated, making it possible for them to swim in thin films of water. In addition, a variety of green algae contain compounds in their cytoplasm, cell wall, or zygote coat that protect against intense sunlight and other terrestrial conditions. Such compounds may have increased the chance that descendants of green algae could survive on land.

**Concept Check 28.5**

**1.** Amoebozoans have lobe- or tube-shaped pseudopodia, whereas forams have threadlike pseudopodia. **2.** Slime molds are fungus-like in that they produce fruiting bodies that aid in the dispersal of spores, and they are animal-like in that they are motile and ingest food. However, slime molds are more closely related to tubulinids and entamoebas than to fungi or animals. **3.** Support. Unikonts lack the unique cytoskeletal features shared by many excavates (see Concept 28.2). Thus, if the unikonts were the first group of eukaryotes to diverge from other eukaryotes (as shown in Figure 28.24), it would be unlikely that the eukaryote common ancestor had the cytoskeletal features found today in many excavates. Such a result would strengthen the case that many excavates share cytoskeletal features because they are members of a monophyletic group, the Excavata.

**Concept Check 28.6**

**1.** Because photosynthetic protists constitute the base of aquatic food webs, many aquatic organisms depend on them for food, either directly or indirectly. (In addition, a substantial percentage of the oxygen produced by photosynthesis is made by photosynthetic protists.) **2.** Protists form mutualistic and parasitic

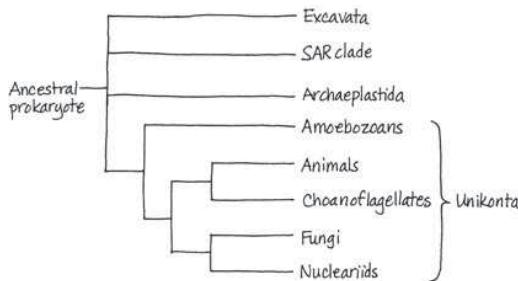
associations with other organisms. Examples include photosynthetic dinoflagellates that form a mutualistic symbiosis with coral polyps, parabasalids that form a mutualistic symbiosis with termites, and the stramenopile *Phytophthora ramorum*, a parasite of oak trees. **3.** Corals depend on their dinoflagellate symbionts for nourishment, so coral bleaching would probably cause the corals to die. As the corals died, less food would be available for fishes and other species that eat coral. As a result, populations of these species might decline, and that, in turn, might cause populations of their predators to decline. **4.** The two approaches differ in the evolutionary changes they may bring about. A strain of *Wolbachia* that confers resistance to infection by *Plasmodium* and does not harm mosquitoes would spread rapidly through the mosquito population. In this case, natural selection would favor any *Plasmodium* individuals that could overcome the resistance to infection conferred by *Wolbachia*. If insecticides are used, mosquitoes that are resistant to the insecticide would be favored by natural selection. Hence, use of *Wolbachia* could cause evolution in *Plasmodium* populations, while using insecticides could cause evolution in mosquito populations.

#### Summary of Key Concepts Questions

**28.1** Sample response: Protists, plants, animals, and fungi are similar in that their cells have a nucleus and other membrane-enclosed organelles, unlike the cells of prokaryotes. These membrane-enclosed organelles make the cells of eukaryotes more complex than the cells of prokaryotes. Protists and other eukaryotes also differ from prokaryotes in having a well-developed cytoskeleton that enables them to have asymmetric forms and to change in shape as they feed, move, or grow. With respect to differences between protists and other eukaryotes, most protists are unicellular, unlike animals, plants, and most fungi. Protists also have greater nutritional diversity than other eukaryotes. **28.2** Unique cytoskeletal features are shared by many excavates. In addition, some members of Excavata have an “excavated” feeding groove for which the group was named. DNA evidence does not strongly support or refute Excavata as a group. Overall, evidence for the group is relatively weak. **28.3** Stramenopiles and alveolates are hypothesized to have originated by secondary endosymbiosis. Under this hypothesis, we can infer that the common ancestor of these two groups had a plastid, in this case of red algal origin. Thus, we would expect that apicomplexans (and alveolates or stramenopile protists) either would have plastids or would have lost their plastids over the course of evolution. **28.4** Red algae, green algae, and land plants are placed in the same supergroup because considerable evidence indicates that these organisms all descended from the same ancestor, an ancient heterotrophic protist that acquired a cyanobacterial endosymbiont. **28.5** The unikonts are a diverse group of eukaryotes that includes many protists, along with animals and fungi. Most of the protists in Unikonta are amoebozoans, a clade of amoebas that have lobe- or tube-shaped pseudopodia (as opposed to the threadlike pseudopodia of rhizarians). Other protists in Unikonta include several groups that are closely related to fungi and several other groups that are closely related to animals. **28.6** Sample response: Ecologically important protists include photosynthetic dinoflagellates that provide essential sources of energy to their symbiotic partners, the corals that build coral reefs. Other important protistan symbionts include those that enable termites to digest wood and *Plasmodium*, the pathogen that causes malaria. Photosynthetic protists such as diatoms are among the most important producers in aquatic communities; as such, many other species in aquatic environments depend on them for food.

#### Test Your Understanding

1. d
2. b
3. b
4. d
5. d
6. c
- 7.



Pathogens that share a relatively recent common ancestor with humans will likely also share metabolic and structural characteristics with humans. Because drugs target the pathogen's metabolism or structure, developing drugs that harm the pathogen but not the patient should be most difficult for pathogens with whom we share the most recent evolutionary history. Working backward in time, we can use the phylogenetic tree to determine the order in which humans shared a common ancestor with pathogens in different taxa. This process leads to the prediction that it should be hardest to develop drugs to combat animal pathogens, followed by choanoflagellate pathogens, fungal and nucleariid pathogens, amoebozoans, other protists, and finally prokaryotes.

#### Chapter 29

##### Figure Questions

**Figure 29.2** In Figure 29.2, land plants are shown as a sister group to the charophytes, not as members of the charophyte lineage. However, current evidence

indicates that land plants emerged from within the charophyte algae, indicating that land plants descended from the common ancestor that gave rise to the charophytes. Hence, when land plants are excluded from the charophytes, the charophytes are a paraphyletic group. **Figure 29.3** The life cycle in Figure 13.6b has alternation of generations; the others do not. Unlike the animal life cycle (Figure 13.6a), in alternation of generations, meiosis produces spores, not gametes. These spores then divide repeatedly by mitosis, ultimately forming a multicellular haploid individual that produces gametes. There is no multicellular haploid stage in the animal life cycle. An alternation of generations life cycle also has a multicellular diploid stage, whereas the life cycle shown in Figure 13.6c does not.

**Figure 29.6** Yes. As shown in the diagram, the sperm cell and the egg cell that fuse each resulted from the mitotic division of spores produced by the same sporophyte. However, these spores would differ genetically from one another because they were produced by meiosis, a cell division process that generates genetic variation among the offspring cells. **Figure 29.8** Because the moss reduces nitrogen loss from the ecosystem, species that typically colonize the soils after the moss probably experience higher soil nitrogen levels than they otherwise would. The resulting increased availability of nitrogen may benefit these species because nitrogen is an essential nutrient that often is in short supply. **Figure 29.11** A fern that had wind-dispersed sperm would not require water for fertilization, thus removing a difficulty that ferns face when they live in arid environments. The fern would also be under strong selection to produce sperm above ground (as opposed to the current situation, where some fern gametophytes are located below ground).

##### Concept Check 29.1

**1.** Land plants share some key traits only with charophytes: rings of cellulose-synthesizing complexes, similarity in sperm structure, and the formation of a phragmoplast in cell division. Comparisons of nuclear and chloroplast genes also point to a common ancestry. **2.** Spore walls toughened by sporopollenin (protects against harsh environmental conditions); multicellular, dependent embryos (provide nutrients and protection to the developing embryo); cuticle (reduces water loss); stomata (control gas exchange and reduce water loss). **3.** The multicellular diploid stage of the life cycle would not produce gametes. Instead, both males and females would produce haploid spores by meiosis. These spores would give rise to multicellular male and female haploid stages—a major change from the single-celled haploid stages (sperm and eggs) that we actually have. The multicellular haploid stages would produce gametes and reproduce sexually. An individual at the multicellular haploid stage of the human life cycle might look like us, or it might look completely different. **4.** Land plants, vascular plants, and seed plants are monophyletic because each of these groups includes the common ancestor of the group and all of the descendants of that common ancestor. The other two categories of plants, the nonvascular plants and the seedless vascular plants, are paraphyletic: These groups do not include all of the descendants of the group's most recent common ancestor.

##### Concept Check 29.2

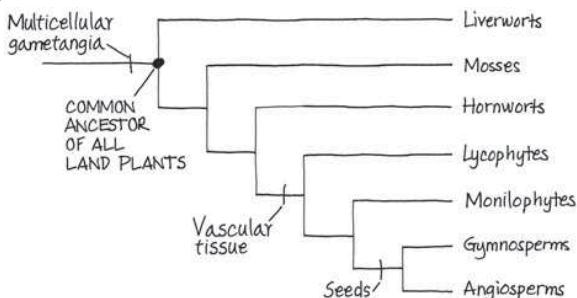
**1.** Bryophytes do not have a vascular transport system, and their life cycle is dominated by gametophytes rather than sporophytes. **2.** Answers may include the following: Large surface area of protonema enhances absorption of water and minerals; the vase-shaped archegonia protect eggs during fertilization and transport nutrients to the embryos via placental transfer cells; the stalk-like seta conducts nutrients from the gametophyte to the capsule, where spores are produced; the peristome enables gradual spore discharge; stomata enable CO<sub>2</sub>/O<sub>2</sub> exchange while minimizing water loss; lightweight spores are readily dispersed by wind. **3.** Effects of global warming on peatlands could result in positive feedback, which occurs when an end product of a process increases its own production. In this case, global warming is expected to lower the water levels of some peatlands. This would expose peat to air and cause it to decompose, thereby releasing stored CO<sub>2</sub> to the atmosphere. The release of more stored CO<sub>2</sub> to the atmosphere could cause additional global warming, which in turn could cause further drops in water levels, the release of still more CO<sub>2</sub> to the atmosphere, additional warming, and so on: an example of positive feedback.

##### Concept Check 29.3

**1.** Lycophytes have microphylls, whereas seed plants and monilophytes (ferns and their relatives) have megaphylls. Monilophytes and seed plants also share other traits not found in lycophytes, such as the initiation of new root branches at various points along the length of an existing root. **2.** Both seedless vascular plants and bryophytes have flagellated sperm that require moisture for fertilization; this shared similarity poses challenges for these species in arid regions. With respect to key differences, seedless vascular plants have lignified, well-developed vascular tissue, a trait that enables the sporophyte to grow tall and that has transformed life on Earth (via the formation of forests). Seedless vascular plants also have true leaves and roots, which, when compared with bryophytes, provide increased surface area for photosynthesis and improve their ability to extract nutrients from soil. **3.** Three mechanisms contribute to the production of genetic variation in sexual reproduction: independent assortment of chromosomes, crossing over, and random fertilization. If fertilization were to occur between gametes from the same gametophyte, all of the offspring would be genetically identical. This would be the case because all of the cells produced by a gametophyte—including its sperm and egg cells—are the descendants of a single spore and hence are genetically identical. Although crossing over and the independent assortment of chromosomes would continue to generate genetic variation during the production of spores (which ultimately develop into gametophytes), overall the amount of genetic variation produced by sexual reproduction would drop.

### Summary of Key Concepts Questions

**29.1**

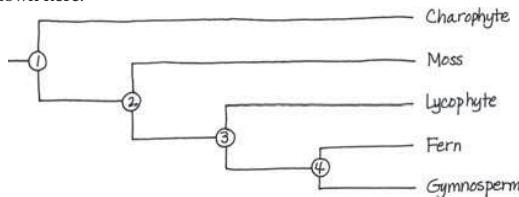


**29.2** Some mosses colonize bare, sandy soils, leading to the increased retention of nitrogen in these otherwise low-nitrogen environments. Other mosses harbor nitrogen-fixing cyanobacteria that increase the availability of nitrogen in the ecosystem. The moss *Sphagnum* is often a major component of deposits of peat (partially decayed organic material). Boggy regions with thick layers of peat, known as peatlands, cover broad geographic regions and contain large reservoirs of carbon. By storing large amounts of carbon—in effect, removing CO<sub>2</sub> from the atmosphere—peatlands affect the global climate, making them of considerable ecological importance. **29.3** Lignified vascular tissue provided the strength needed to support a tall plant against gravity, as well as a means to transport water and nutrients to plant parts located high above ground. Roots were another key trait, anchoring the plant to the ground and providing additional structural support for plants that grew tall. Tall plants could shade shorter plants, thereby outcompeting them for light. Because the spores of a tall plant disperse farther than the spores of a short plant, it is also likely that tall plants could colonize new habitats more rapidly than short plants.

#### Test Your Understanding

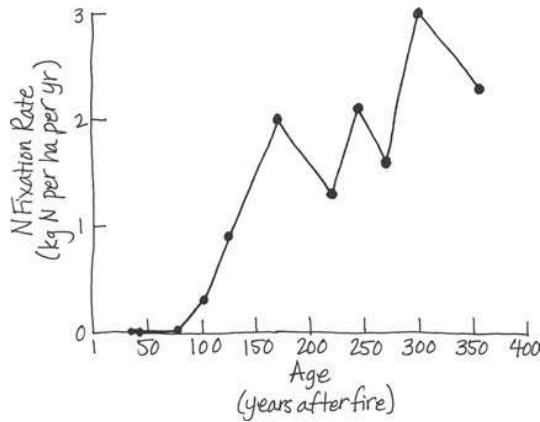
**1. b 2. d 3. c 4. a 5. b**

**6.** (a) diploid; (b) haploid; (c) haploid; (d) diploid **7.** Based on our current understanding of the evolution of major plant groups, the phylogeny has the four branch points shown here:



Derived characters unique to the charophyte and land plant clade (indicated by branch point 1) include rings of cellulose-synthesizing complexes, flagellated sperm structure, and a phragmoplast. Derived characters unique to the land plant clade (branch point 2) include alternation of generations; multicellular, dependent embryos; walled spores produced in sporangia; multicellular gametangia; and apical meristems. Derived characters unique to the vascular plant clade (branch point 3) include life cycles with dominant sporophytes, complex vascular systems (xylem and phloem), and well-developed roots and leaves. Derived characters unique to the monilophyte and seed plant clade (branch point 4) include megaphylls and roots that can branch at various points along the length of an existing root.

**8. (a)**



**(b)** In the first 40 years after a fire, nitrogen fixation rates were below 0.01 kg per ha per yr, which was less than 1% of the amount of nitrogen deposited from the atmosphere. Thus, in the initial decades after a fire, the moss *Pleurozium* and the nitrogen-fixing bacteria it harbors had relatively little effect on the amount of nitrogen added to the forest. With time, however, *Pleurozium* and its symbiotic,

nitrogen-fixing bacteria became increasingly important. By 170 years after a fire, the percentage of the ground surface covered by the moss had increased to about 70%, leading to a corresponding increase in populations of the symbiotic bacteria. As would be predicted from this result, in older forests considerably more nitrogen (130–300%) was added by nitrogen fixation than was deposited from the atmosphere.

### Chapter 30

#### Figure Questions

**Figure 30.2** Retaining the gametophyte within the sporophyte shields the egg-containing gametophyte from UV radiation. UV radiation is a mutagen. Hence, we would expect fewer mutations to occur in the egg cells produced by a gametophyte retained within the body of a sporophyte. Most mutations are harmful. Thus, the fitness of embryos should increase because fewer embryos would carry harmful mutations. **Figure 30.3** It contains cells from three generations: (1) the current sporophyte (cells of ploidy 2n, found in the seed coat and in the megasporangium remnant that surrounds the spore wall); (2) the female gametophyte (cells of ploidy n, found in the food supply); and (3) the sporophyte of the next generation (cells of ploidy 2n, found in the embryo). **Figure 30.4** Mitosis. A single haploid megasporangium divides by mitosis to produce a multicellular, haploid female gametophyte. (Likewise, a single haploid microsporangium divides by mitosis to produce a multicellular male gametophyte.) **Figure 30.14** No. The branching order shown could still be correct if *Amborella* and other early angiosperms had originated prior to 150 million years ago, but angiosperm fossils of that age had not yet been discovered. In such a situation, the 140-million-year-old date for the origin of the angiosperms shown on the phylogeny would be incorrect.

#### Concept Check 30.1

- To reach the eggs, the flagellated sperm of seedless plants must swim through a film of water, usually over a distance of no more than a few centimeters. In contrast, the sperm of seed plants do not require water because they are produced within pollen grains that can be transported long distances by wind or by animal pollinators. Although flagellated in some species, the sperm of seed plants do not require mobility because pollen tubes convey them from the point at which the pollen grain is deposited (near the ovules) directly to the eggs.
- The reduced gametophytes of seed plants are nurtured by sporophytes and protected from stress, such as drought conditions and UV radiation. Pollen grains, with walls containing sporopollenin, provide protection during transport by wind or animals. Seeds have one or two layers of protective tissue, the seed coat, that improve survival by providing more protection from environmental stresses than do the walls of spores. Seeds also contain a stored supply of food, which provides nourishment for growth after dormancy is broken and the embryo emerges as a seedling.
- If a seed could not enter dormancy, the embryo would continue to grow after it was fertilized. As a result, the embryo might rapidly become too large to be dispersed, thus limiting its transport. The embryo's chance of survival might also be reduced because it could not delay growth until conditions become favorable.

#### Concept Check 30.2

- Although gymnosperms are similar in not having their seeds enclosed in ovaries and fruits, their seed-bearing structures vary greatly. For instance, cycads have large cones, whereas some gymnosperms, such as *Ginkgo* and *Gnetum*, have small cones that look somewhat like berries, even though they are not fruits. Leaf shape also varies greatly, from the needles of many conifers to the palmlike leaves of cycads to *Gnetum* leaves that look like those of flowering plants.
- The pine life cycle illustrates heterospory, as ovulate cones produce megasporangia and pollen cones produce microsporangia. The reduced gametophytes are evident in the form of the microscopic pollen grains that develop from microspores and the microscopic female gametophyte that develops from the megasporangium. The egg is shown developing within an ovule, and a pollen tube is shown conveying the sperm. The figure also shows the protective and nutritive features of a seed.
- No. Fossil evidence indicates that extant gymnosperms originated at least 305 million years ago, but this does not mean that extant angiosperms are that old—only that the most recent common ancestor of extant gymnosperms and extant angiosperms must be that old.

#### Concept Check 30.3

- In the oak's life cycle, the tree (the sporophyte) produces flowers, which contain gametophytes in pollen grains and ovules; the eggs in ovules are fertilized; the mature ovaries develop into dry fruits called acorns. We can view the oak's life cycle as starting when the acorn seeds germinate, resulting in embryos giving rise to seedlings and finally to mature trees, which produce flowers—and then more acorns.
- Pine cones and flowers both have sporophylls, modified leaves that produce spores. Pine trees have separate pollen cones (with pollen grains) and ovulate cones (with ovules inside cone scales). In flowers, pollen grains are produced by the anthers of stamens, and ovules are within the ovaries of carpels. Unlike pine cones, many flowers produce both pollen and ovules.
- The fact that the clade with bilaterally symmetrical flowers had more species establishes a correlation between flower shape and the rate of plant speciation. Flower shape is not necessarily responsible for the result because the shape (that is, bilateral or radial symmetry) may have been correlated with another factor that was the actual cause of the observed result. Note, however, that flower shape was associated with increased speciation rates when averaged across 19 different pairs of plant lineages. Since these 19 lineage pairs were independent of one another, this association suggests—but does not establish—that differences in flower shape cause differences in speciation rates. In general, strong evidence for causation can come

from controlled, manipulative experiments, but such experiments are usually not possible for studies of past evolutionary events.

#### Concept Check 30.4

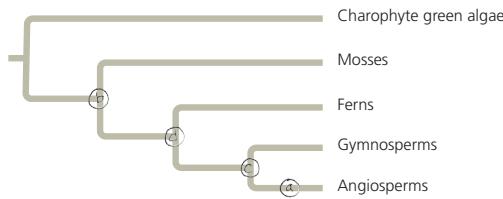
**1.** Plant diversity can be considered a resource because plants provide many important benefits to humans; as a resource, plant diversity is nonrenewable because if a species is lost to extinction, that loss is permanent. **2.** A detailed phylogeny of the seed plants would identify many different monophyletic groups of seed plants. Using this phylogeny, researchers could look for clades that contained species in which medicinally useful compounds had already been discovered. Identification of such clades would allow researchers to concentrate their search for new medicinal compounds among clade members—as opposed to searching for new compounds in species that were selected at random from the more than 250,000 existing species of seed plants.

#### Summary of Key Concepts Questions

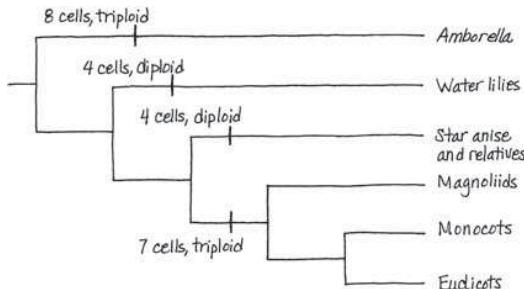
**30.1** The integument of an ovule develops into the protective coat of a seed. The ovule's megasporangium surrounds the megasporangium, which encloses the seed's food supply and embryo. **30.2** Gymnosperms arose about 305 million years ago, making them a successful group in terms of their evolutionary longevity. Gymnosperms have the five derived traits common to all seed plants (reduced gametophytes, heterospory, ovules, pollen, and seeds), making them well adapted for life on land. Finally, because gymnosperms dominate immense geographic regions today, the group is also highly successful in geographic distribution. **30.3** Darwin was troubled by the relatively sudden and geographically widespread appearance of angiosperms in the fossil record. Fossil evidence shows that angiosperms arose and began to diversify over a period of 20–30 million years, a less rapid event than was suggested by the fossils known during Darwin's lifetime. Fossil discoveries have also uncovered extinct lineages of woody seed plants that may have been closely related to angiosperms; one such group, the Bennettitales, had flowerlike structures that may have been pollinated by insects. Phylogenetic analyses have identified *Amborella* as the most basal angiosperm lineage; *Amborella* is woody, and hence its basal position supports the conclusion (from fossils) that the angiosperm common ancestor was likely woody. **30.4** The loss of tropical forests could contribute to global warming (which would have negative effects on many human societies). People also depend on Earth's biodiversity for many products and services and hence would be harmed by the loss of species that would occur if the world's remaining tropical forests were cut down. With respect to a possible mass extinction, tropical forests harbor at least 50% of the species on Earth. If the remaining tropical forests were destroyed, large numbers of these species could be driven to extinction, thus rivaling the losses that occurred in the five mass extinction events documented in the fossil record.

#### Test Your Understanding

1. c   2. a   3. b   4. d   5. c  
6.



8. (a)



(b) The phylogeny indicates that basal angiosperms differed from other angiosperms in terms of the number of cells in female gametophytes and the ploidy of the endosperm. The ancestral state of the angiosperms cannot be determined from these data alone. It is possible that the common ancestor of angiosperms had seven-celled female gametophytes and triploid endosperm and hence that the eight-celled and four-celled conditions found in basal angiosperms represent derived traits for those lineages. Alternatively, either the eight-celled or four-celled condition may represent the ancestral state.

## Chapter 31

#### Figure Questions

**Figure 31.2** DNA from each of these mushrooms would be identical if each mushroom is part of a single hyphal network, as is likely. **Figure 31.5** The haploid spores produced in the sexual portion of the life cycle develop from haploid nuclei that were produced by meiosis; because genetic recombination occurs during meiosis, these spores will differ genetically from one another. In contrast, the haploid spores produced in the asexual portion of the life cycle develop from nuclei that were produced by mitosis; as a result, these spores are genetically identical to one another. **Figure 31.15** One or both of the following would apply to each species: DNA analyses would reveal that it is a member of the ascomycete clade, or aspects of its sexual life cycle would indicate that it is an ascomycete (for example, it would produce ascii and ascospores). **Figure 31.20** Two possible controls would be E-P- and E+P-. Results from an E-P- control could be compared with results from the E-P+ experiment, and results from an E+P- control could be compared with results from the E+P+ experiment. Together, these two comparisons would indicate whether the addition of the pathogen causes an increase in leaf mortality. Results from an E-P- experiment could also be compared with results from the second control (E+P-) to determine whether adding the fungal endophytes has a negative effect on the plant.

#### Concept Check 31.1

**1.** Both a fungus and a human are heterotrophs. Many fungi digest their food externally by secreting enzymes into the food and then absorbing the small molecules that result from digestion. Other fungi absorb such small molecules directly from their environment. In contrast, humans (and most other animals) ingest relatively large pieces of food and digest the food within their bodies. **2.** The ancestors of such a mutualist most likely secreted powerful enzymes to digest the body of their insect host. Since such enzymes would harm a living host, it is likely that the mutualist would not produce such enzymes or would restrict their secretion and use. **3.** Carbon that enters the plant through stomata is fixed into sugar through photosynthesis. Some of these sugars are absorbed by the fungus that partners with the plant to form mycorrhizae; others are transported within the plant body and used in the plant. Thus, the carbon may be deposited in either the body of the plant or the body of the fungus.

#### Concept Check 31.2

**1.** The majority of the fungal life cycle is spent in the haploid stage, whereas the majority of the human life cycle is spent in the diploid stage. **2.** The two mushrooms might be reproductive structures of the same mycelium (the same organism). Or they might be parts of two separate organisms that have arisen from a single parent organism through asexual reproduction (for example, from two genetically identical asexual spores) and thus carry the same genetic information.

#### Concept Check 31.3

**1.** DNA evidence indicates that fungi, animals, and their protistan relatives form a clade, the opisthokonts. Furthermore, some chytrids and other fungi thought to be members of early diverging lineages have posterior flagella, as do most other opisthokonts. This suggests that other fungal lineages lost their flagella after diverging from ancestors that had flagella. **2.** Mycorrhizae form extensive networks of hyphae through the soil, enabling nutrients to be absorbed more efficiently than a plant can do on its own; this is true today, and similar associations were probably very important for the earliest land plants (which lacked roots). Evidence for the antiquity of mycorrhizal associations includes fossils showing arbuscular mycorrhizae in the early land plant *Aglaophyton* and molecular results showing that genes required for the formation of mycorrhizae are present in liverworts and other basal plant lineages. **3.** Fungi are heterotrophs. Prior to the colonization of land by plants, terrestrial fungi would have lived where other organisms (or their remains) were present and provided a source of food. Thus, if fungi colonized land before plants, they could have fed on prokaryotes or protists that lived on land or by the water's edge—but not on the plants or animals on which many fungi feed today.

#### Concept Check 31.4

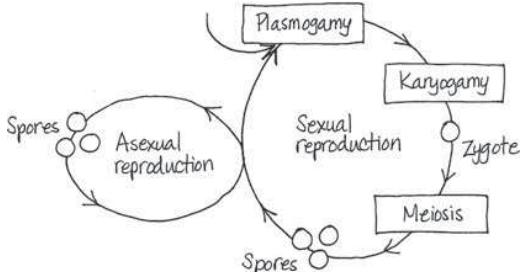
**1.** Flagellated spores; molecular evidence also suggests that chytrids include species that belong to early-diverging fungal lineages. **2.** Possible answers include the following: In zygomycetes, the sturdy, thick-walled zygosporangium can withstand harsh conditions and then undergo karyogamy and meiosis when the environment is favorable for reproduction. In glomeromycetes, the hyphae have a specialized morphology that enables the fungi to form arbuscular mycorrhizae with plant roots. In ascomycetes, the asexual spores (conidia) are often produced in chains or clusters at the tips of conidiophores, where they are easily dispersed by wind. The often cup-shaped ascocarp houses the sexual spore-forming ascus. In basidiomycetes, the basidiocarp supports and protects a large surface area of basidia, from which spores are dispersed. **3.** Such a change to the life cycle of an ascomycete would reduce the number and genetic diversity of ascospores that result from a mating event. Ascospore number would drop because a mating event would lead to the formation of only one ascus. Ascospore genetic diversity would also drop because in ascomycetes, one mating event leads to the formation of ascii by many different dikaryotic cells. As a result, genetic recombination and meiosis occur independently many different times—which could not happen if only a single ascus was formed. It is also likely that if such an ascomycete formed an ascocarp, the shape of the ascocarp would differ considerably from that found in its close relatives.

**Concept Check 31.5**

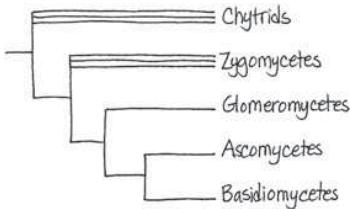
**1.** A suitable environment for growth, retention of water and minerals, protection from intense sunlight, and protection from being eaten. **2.** A hardy spore stage enables dispersal to host organisms through a variety of mechanisms; their ability to grow rapidly in a favorable new environment enables them to capitalize on the host's resources. **3.** Many different outcomes might have occurred. Organisms that currently form mutualisms with fungi might have gained the ability to perform the tasks currently done by their fungal partners, or they might have formed similar mutualisms with other organisms (such as bacteria). Alternatively, organisms that currently form mutualisms with fungi might be less effective at living in their present environments. For example, the colonization of land by plants might have been more difficult. And if plants did eventually colonize land without fungal mutualists, natural selection might have favored plants that formed more highly divided and extensive root systems (in part replacing mycorrhizae).

**Summary of Key Concepts Questions**

**31.1** The body of a multicellular fungus typically consists of thin filaments called hyphae. These filaments form an interwoven mass (mycelium) that penetrates the substrate on which the fungus grows and feeds. Because the individual filaments are thin, the surface-to-volume ratio of the mycelium is maximized, making nutrient absorption highly efficient.

**31.2**

**31.3** Phylogenetic analyses show that fungi and animals are more closely related to each other than either is to other multicellular eukaryotes (such as plants or multicellular algae). These analyses also show that fungi are more closely related to single-celled protists called nucleariids than they are to animals, whereas animals are more closely related to a different group of single-celled protists, the choanoflagellates, than they are to fungi. In combination, these results indicate that multicellularity evolved in fungi and animals independently, from different single-celled ancestors.

**31.4**

**31.5** As decomposers, fungi break down the bodies of dead organisms, thereby recycling elements between the living and nonliving environments. Without the activities of fungi and bacterial decomposers, essential nutrients would remain tied up in organic matter, and life would cease. As an example of their key role as mutualists, fungi form mycorrhizal associations with plants. These associations improve the growth and survival of plants, thereby indirectly affecting the many other species (humans included) that depend on plants. As pathogens, fungi harm other species. In some cases, fungal pathogens have caused their host populations to decline across broad geographic regions, as seen for the American chestnut.

**Test Your Understanding**

1. b 2. d 3. a 4. d

**Chapter 32****Figure Questions**

**Figure 32.3** As described in **1** and **2**, choanoflagellates and a broad range of animals have collar cells. Since collar cells have never been observed in plants, fungi, or non-choanoflagellate protists, this suggests that choanoflagellates may be more closely related to animals than to other eukaryotes. If choanoflagellates are more closely related to animals than to any other group of eukaryotes, choanoflagellates and animals should share other traits that are not found in other eukaryotes. The data described in **3** are consistent with this prediction.

**Figure 32.10** The cells of an early embryo with deuterostome development typically are not committed to a particular developmental fate, whereas the cells of an early embryo with protostome development typically are committed to a particular developmental fate. As a result, an embryo with deuterostome development would be more likely to contain stem cells that could give rise to cells of any type.

**Figure 32.11** Cnidaria is the sister phylum in this tree.

**Concept Check 32.1**

**1.** In most animals, the zygote undergoes cleavage, which leads to the formation of a blastula. Next, in gastrulation, one end of the embryo folds inward, producing layers of embryonic tissue. As the cells of these layers differentiate, a wide variety of animal forms are produced. Despite the diversity of animal forms, animal development is controlled by a similar set of *Hox* genes across a broad range of taxa. **2.** The imaginary plant would require tissues composed of cells that were analogous to the muscle and nerve cells found in animals: "Muscle" tissue would be necessary for the plant to chase prey, and "nerve" tissue would be required for the plant to coordinate its movements when chasing prey. To digest captured prey, the plant would need to either secrete enzymes into one or more digestive cavities (which could be modified leaves, as in a Venus flytrap) or secrete enzymes outside of its body and feed by absorption. To extract nutrients from the soil—yet be able to chase prey—the plant would need something other than fixed roots, perhaps retractable "roots" or a way to ingest soil. To conduct photosynthesis, the plant would require chloroplasts. Overall, such an imaginary plant would be very similar to an animal that had chloroplasts and retractile roots.

**Concept Check 32.2**

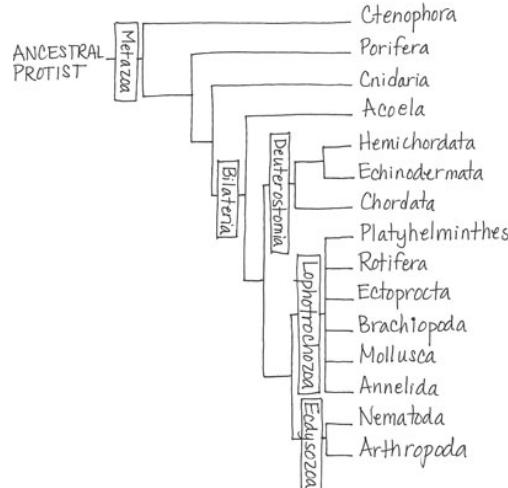
**1.** c, b, a, d **2.** We cannot infer whether extant animals originated before or after extant fungi. If correct, the date provided for the most recent common ancestor of fungi and animals would indicate that animals originated some time within the last billion years. The fossil record indicates that animals originated at least 560 million years ago. Thus, we could conclude only that animals originated sometime between 1 billion years ago and 560 million years ago. **3.** In descent with modification, an organism shares characteristics with its ancestors (due to their shared ancestry), yet it also differs from its ancestors (because organisms accumulate differences over time as they adapt to their surroundings). As an example, consider the evolution of animal cadherin proteins, a key step in the origin of multicellular animals. These proteins illustrate both of these aspects of descent with modification: Animal cadherin proteins share many protein domains with a cadherin-like protein found in their choanoflagellate ancestors, yet they also have a unique "CCD" domain that is not found in choanoflagellates.

**Concept Check 32.3**

**1.** Grade-level characteristics are those that multiple lineages share regardless of evolutionary history. Some grade-level characteristics may have evolved multiple times independently. Features that unite clades are derived characteristics that originated in a common ancestor and were passed on to the various descendants. **2.** A snail has a spiral and determinate cleavage pattern; a human has radial, indeterminate cleavage. In a snail, the coelomic cavity is formed by splitting of mesoderm masses; in a human, the coelom forms from folds of archenteron. In a snail, the mouth forms from the blastopore; in a human, the anus develops from the blastopore. **3.** Most coelomate triploblasts have two openings to their digestive tract, a mouth and an anus. As such, their bodies have a structure that is analogous to that of a doughnut: The digestive tract (the hole of the doughnut) runs from the mouth to the anus and is surrounded by various tissues (the solid part of the doughnut). The doughnut analogy is most obvious at early stages of development (see Figure 32.10c).

**Concept Check 32.4**

**1.** Cnidarians possess true tissues, while sponges do not. Also unlike sponges, cnidarians exhibit body symmetry, though it is radial and not bilateral as in other animal phyla.

**2.**

Under the hypothesis that ctenophores are basal metazoans, sponges (which lack true tissues) would be nested within a clade whose other members all have true tissues. As a result, a group composed of animals with true tissues would not form a clade. **3.** The phylogeny in Figure 32.11 indicates that molluscs are members of Lophotrochozoa, one of the three main groups of bilaterians (the others being Deuterostomia and Ecdysozoa). As seen in Figure 25.11, the fossil record shows

that molluscs were present tens of millions of years before the Cambrian explosion. Thus, long before the Cambrian explosion, the lophotrochoan clade had formed and was evolving independently of the evolutionary lineages leading to Deuterostomia and Ecdysozoa. Based on the phylogeny in Figure 32.11, we can also conclude that the lineages leading to Deuterostomia and Ecdysozoa were independent of one another before the Cambrian explosion. Since the lineages leading to the three main clades of bilaterians were evolving independently of one another prior to the Cambrian explosion, that explosion could be viewed as consisting of three “explosions,” not one.

#### Summary of Key Concepts Questions

**Concept 32.1** Unlike animals, which are heterotrophs that ingest their food, plants are autotrophs, and fungi are heterotrophs that grow on their food and feed by absorption. Animals lack cell walls, which are found in both plants and fungi. Animals also have muscle tissue and nerve tissue, which are not found in either plants or fungi. In addition, the sperm and egg cells of animals are produced by meiotic division, unlike what occurs in plants and fungi (where reproductive cells such as sperm and eggs are produced by mitotic division). Finally, animals regulate the development of body form with *Hox* genes, a unique group of genes that is not found in either plants or fungi. **Concept 32.2** Current hypotheses about the cause of the Cambrian explosion include new predator-prey relationships, an increase in atmospheric oxygen, and an increase in developmental flexibility provided by the origin of *Hox* genes and other genetic changes.

**Concept 32.3** Body plans provide a helpful way to compare and contrast key features of organisms. However, phylogenetic analyses show that similar body plans have arisen independently in different groups of organisms. As such, similar body plans may have arisen by convergent evolution and hence may not be informative about evolutionary relationships. **Concept 32.4** Listed in order from the most to the least inclusive clade, humans belong to Metazoa, Eumetazoa, Bilateria, Deuterostomia, and Chordata.

#### Test Your Understanding

1. a 2. d 3. c 4. b

### Chapter 33

#### Figure Questions

**Figure 33.8** The *Obelia* life cycle is most similar to the life cycle shown in Figure 13.6a. In *Obelia*, both the polyp and the medusa are diploid organisms. Typical of animals, only the single-celled gametes are haploid. By contrast, plants and some algae (Figure 13.6b) have a multicellular haploid generation and a multicellular diploid generation. *Obelia* also differs from fungi and some protists (Figure 13.6c) in that the diploid stage of those organisms is unicellular.

**Figure 33.9** Possible examples might include the endoplasmic reticulum (flattening; increases area for biosynthesis, root hairs (projections; increase area for absorption), or cardiovascular systems (branching; increase area for materials exchange in tissues). **Figure 33.11** Adding fertilizer to the water supply would probably increase the abundance of algae, and that, in turn, would likely increase the abundance of snails (which eat algae). If the water was also contaminated with infected human feces, an increase in the number of snails would likely lead to an increase in the abundance of blood flukes (which require snails as an intermediate host). As a result, the occurrence of schistosomiasis might increase.

**Figure 33.21** The extinction of freshwater bivalves might lead to an increase in the abundance of photosynthetic protists and bacteria. Because these organisms are at the base of aquatic food webs, increases in their abundance could have major effects on aquatic communities (including both increases and decreases in the abundance of other species). **Figure 33.29** Such a result would be consistent with the *Ubx* and *abd-A* *Hox* genes having played a major role in the evolution of increased body segment diversity in arthropods. However, by itself, such a result would simply show that the presence of the *Ubx* and *abd-A* *Hox* genes was correlated with an increase in body segment diversity in arthropods; it would not provide direct experimental evidence that the acquisition of the *Ubx* and *abd-A* genes caused an increase in arthropod body segment diversity. **Figure 33.34** You should have circled the clade that includes the insects, remipedians, and other crustaceans, along with the branch point that represents their most recent common ancestor.

#### Concept Check 33.1

1. The flagella of choanocytes draw water through their collars, which trap food particles. The particles are engulfed by phagocytosis and digested, either by choanocytes or by amoebocytes. 2. The collar cells of sponges bear a striking resemblance to a choanoflagellate cell. This suggests that the last common ancestor of animals and their protist sister group may have resembled a choanoflagellate. Nevertheless, mesomycetozoans could still be the sister group of animals. If this is the case, the lack of collar cells in mesomycetozoans would indicate that over time their structure evolved in ways that caused it to no longer resemble a choanoflagellate cell. It is also possible that choanoflagellates and sponges share similar-looking collar cells as a result of convergent evolution.

#### Concept Check 33.2

1. Both the polyp and the medusa are composed of an outer epidermis and an inner gastrodermis separated by a gelatinous layer, the mesoglea. The polyp is a cylindrical form that adheres to the substrate by its aboral end; the medusa is a flattened, mouth-down form that moves freely in the water. 2. Cnidarian stinging cells (cnidocytes) function in defense and prey capture. They contain capsule-like organelles (cnidae), which in turn contain coiled threads. The threads either inject poison or stick to and entangle small prey. 3. Evolution is not goal oriented; hence, it would not be correct to argue that cnidarians were not “highly evolved” simply because their form had changed relatively little over the past 560 million

years. Instead, the fact that cnidarians have persisted for hundreds of millions of years indicates that the cnidarian body plan is a highly successful one.

#### Concept Check 33.3

1. Tapeworms can absorb food from their environment and release ammonia into their environment through their body surface because their body is very flat, due in part to the lack of a coelom. 2. The inner tube is the alimentary canal, which runs the length of the body. The outer tube is the body wall. The two tubes are separated by the coelom. 3. All molluscs have inherited a foot from their common ancestor. However, in different groups of molluscs, the structure of the foot has been modified over time (by natural selection) in ways that reflect how the foot is used in locomotion by members of each clade. In gastropods, the foot is used as a holdfast or to move slowly on the substrate. In cephalopods, the foot has been modified into part of the tentacles and into an excurrent siphon, through which water is propelled (resulting in movement in the opposite direction).

#### Concept Check 33.4

1. Nematodes lack body segments and a true coelom; annelids have both. 2. The arthropod exoskeleton, which had already evolved in the ocean, allows terrestrial species to retain water and support their bodies on land. Wings allow insects to disperse quickly to new habitats and to find food and mates. The tracheal system allows for efficient gas exchange despite the presence of an exoskeleton. 3. Yes. Under the traditional hypothesis, we would expect body segmentation to be controlled by similar *Hox* genes in annelids and arthropods. However, if annelids are in Lophotrochozoa and arthropods are in Ecdysozoa (as current evidence suggests), body segmentation may have evolved independently in these two groups. In such a case, we might expect that different *Hox* genes would control the development of body segmentation in the two clades.

#### Concept Check 33.5

1. Each tube foot consists of an ampulla and a podium. When the ampulla squeezes, it forces water into the podium, which causes the podium to expand and contact the substrate. Adhesive chemicals are then secreted from the base of the podium, thereby attaching the podium to the substrate. 2. Both insects and nematodes are members of Ecdysozoa, one of the three major clades of bilaterians. Therefore, a characteristic shared by *Drosophila* and *Caenorhabditis* may be informative for other members of their clade—but not necessarily for members of Deuterostomia. Instead, Figure 33.2 suggests that a species within Echinodermata or Chordata might be a more appropriate invertebrate model organism from which to draw inferences about humans and other vertebrates. 3. Echinoderms include species with a wide range of body forms. However, even echinoderms that look very different from one another, such as sea stars and sea cucumbers, share characteristics unique to their phylum, including a water vascular system and tube feet. The differences between echinoderm species illustrate the diversity of life, while the characteristics they share illustrate the unity of life. The match between organisms and their environments can be seen in such echinoderm features as the ever-slimy stomachs of sea stars (enabling them to digest prey that are larger than their mouth) and the complex, jaw-like structure that sea urchins use to eat seaweed.

#### Summary of Key Concepts Questions

**33.1** The sponge body consists of two layers of cells, both of which are in contact with water. As a result, gas exchange and waste removal occur as substances diffuse into and out of the cells of the body. Choanocytes and amoebocytes ingest food particles from the surrounding water. Choanocytes also release food particles to amoebocytes, which then digest the food particles and deliver nutrients to other cells. **33.2** The cnidarian body plan consists of a sac with a central digestive compartment, the gastrovascular cavity. The single opening to this compartment serves as both a mouth and an anus. The two main variations on this body plan are sessile polyps (which adhere to the substrate at the end of the body opposite to the mouth/anus) and motile medusae (which move freely through the water and resemble flattened, mouth-down versions of polyps). **33.3** No. Some lophotrochozoans have a crown of ciliated tentacles that function in feeding (called a lophophore), while others go through a distinctive developmental stage known as trophophore larvae. Many other lophotrochozoans do not have either of these features. As a result, the clade is defined primarily by DNA similarities, not morphological similarities. **33.4** Many nematode species live in soil and in sediments on the bottom of bodies of water. These free-living species play important roles in decomposition and nutrient cycling. Other nematodes are parasites, including many species that attack the roots of plants and some that attack animals (including humans). Arthropods have profound effects on all aspects of ecology. In aquatic environments, crustaceans play key roles as grazers (of algae), scavengers, and predators, and some species, such as krill, are important sources of food for whales and other vertebrates. On land, it is difficult to think of features of the natural world that are not affected in some way by insects and other arthropods, such as spiders and ticks. There are more than 1 million species of insects, many of which have enormous ecological effects as herbivores, predators, parasites, decomposers, and vectors of disease. Insects are also key sources of food for many organisms, including humans in some regions of the world. **33.5** Echinoderms and chordates are both members of Deuterostomia, one of the three main clades of bilaterian animals. As such, chordates (including humans) are more closely related to echinoderms than we are to animals in any of the other phyla covered in this chapter. Nevertheless, echinoderms and chordates have evolved independently for over 500 million years. This statement does not contradict the close relationship of echinoderms and chordates, but it does make clear that “close” is a relative term indicating that these two phyla are more closely related to each other than either is to animal phyla not in Deuterostomia.

#### Test Your Understanding

1. a 2. c 3. b 4. d 5. c 6. d

## Chapter 34

### Figure Questions

**Figure 34.6** Results in these figures suggest that specific *Hox* genes, as well as the order in which they are expressed, have been highly conserved over the course of evolution. **Figure 34.19** *Tiktaalik* was a lobe-fin fish that had both fish and tetrapod characters. Like a fish, *Tiktaalik* had fins, scales, and gills. As described by Darwin's concept of descent with modification, such shared characters can be attributed to descent from ancestral species—in this case, *Tiktaalik*'s descent from fish ancestors. *Tiktaalik* also had traits that were unlike a fish but like a tetrapod, including a flat skull, a neck, a full set of ribs, and the skeletal structure of its fin. These characters illustrate the second part of descent with modification, showing how ancestral features had become modified over time. **Figure 34.20** Some time between 370 mya and 340 mya. We can infer this because amphibians must have originated after the most recent common ancestor of *Tulerpeton* and living tetrapods (and that ancestor is said to have originated 370 mya), but no later than the date of the earliest known fossils of amphibians (shown in the figure as 340 mya). **Figure 34.24** Pterosaurs did not descend from the dinosaur common ancestor; hence, pterosaurs are not dinosaurs. However, birds are descendants of the common ancestor of the dinosaurs. As a result, a monophyletic clade of dinosaurs must include birds. In that sense, birds are dinosaurs. **Figure 34.36** In general, the process of exaptation occurs as a structure that had one function acquires a different function via a series of intermediate stages. Each of these intermediate stages typically has some function in the organism in which it is found. The incorporation of articular and quadrate bones into the mammalian ear illustrates exaptation because these bones originally evolved as part of the jaw, where they functioned as the jaw hinge, but over time they became co-opted for another function, namely, the transmission of sound. **Figure 34.42** The phylogeny shows humans as the sister group to the lineage that contains chimpanzees and bonobos. This relationship is not consistent with humans as having descended from either chimpanzees or bonobos. If humans had descended from chimpanzees, for example, the human lineage would be nested within the chimpanzee lineage, much as birds are nested within the reptile clade (see Figure 34.24). **Figure 34.49** Fossil evidence indicates that Neanderthals did not live in Africa; hence there would have been little opportunity for mating (gene flow) between Neanderthals and humans in Africa. However, as humans migrated from Africa, mating may have occurred between Neanderthals and humans in the first region where the two species encountered one another: the Middle East. Humans carrying Neanderthal genes may then have migrated to other locations, explaining why Neanderthals are equally related to humans from France, China, and Papua New Guinea.

### Concept Check 34.1

1. The four characters are a notochord; a dorsal, hollow nerve chord; pharyngeal slits or clefts; and a muscular, post-anal tail. **2.** In humans, these characters are present only in the embryo. The notochord becomes disks between the vertebrae; the dorsal, hollow nerve cord develops into the brain and spinal cord; the pharyngeal clefts develop into various adult structures, and the tail is almost completely lost. **3.** Not necessarily. It would be possible that the chordate common ancestor had this gene, which was then lost in the lancelet lineage and retained in other chordates. However, it would also be possible that the chordate common ancestor lacked this gene; this could occur if the gene originated after lancelets diverged from other chordates but before tunicates diverged from other chordates.

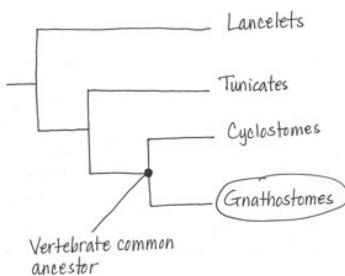
### Concept Check 34.2

1. Lampreys have a round, rasping mouth, which they use to attach to fish. Conodonts had two sets of mineralized dental elements, which may have been used to impale prey and cut it into smaller pieces. **2.** Such a finding suggests that early organisms with a head were favored by natural selection in several different evolutionary lineages. However, while a logical argument can be made that having a head was advantageous, fossils alone do not constitute proof. **3.** In armored jawless vertebrates, bone served as external armor that may have provided protection from predators. Some species also had mineralized mouthparts, which could be used for either predation or scavenging.

### Concept Check 34.3

1. Both are gnathostomes and have jaws, four clusters of *Hox* genes, enlarged forebrains, and lateral line systems. Shark skeletons consist mainly of cartilage, whereas tuna have bony skeletons. Sharks also have a spiral valve. Tuna have an operculum and a swim bladder, as well as flexible rays supporting their fins. **2.** Aquatic gnathostomes have jaws (an adaptation for feeding) and paired fins and a tail (adaptations for swimming). Aquatic gnathostomes also typically have streamlined bodies for efficient swimming and swim bladders or other mechanisms (such as oil storage in sharks) for buoyancy.

3.



4. Yes, that could have happened. The paired appendages of aquatic gnathostomes other than the lobe-fins could have served as a starting point for the evolution of limbs. The colonization of land by aquatic gnathostomes other than the lobe-fins might have been facilitated in lineages that possessed lungs, as that would have enabled those organisms to breathe air.

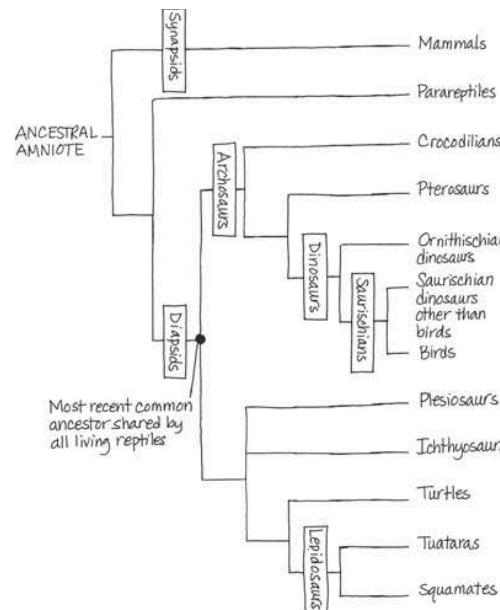
### Concept Check 34.4

1. Tetrapods are thought to have originated about 365 million years ago when the fins of some lobe-fins evolved into the limbs of tetrapods. In addition to their four limbs with digits—a key derived trait for which the group is named—other derived traits of tetrapods include a neck (consisting of vertebrae that separate the head from the rest of the body), and a pelvic girdle that is fused to the backbone.
2. Some fully aquatic species are paedomorphic, retaining larval features for life in water as adults. Species that live in dry environments may avoid dehydration by burrowing or living under moist leaves, and they protect their eggs with foam nests, viviparity, and other adaptations. **3.** Many amphibians spend part of their life cycle in aquatic environments and part on land. Thus, they may be exposed to a wide range of environmental problems, including water and air pollution and the loss or degradation of aquatic and/or terrestrial habitats. In addition, amphibians have highly permeable skin, providing relatively little protection from external conditions, and their eggs do not have a protective shell.

### Concept Check 34.5

1. The amniotic egg provides protection to the embryo and allows the embryo to develop on land, eliminating the necessity of a watery environment for reproduction. Another key adaptation is rib cage ventilation, which improves the efficiency of air intake and may have allowed early amniotes to dispense with breathing through their skin. Finally, not breathing through their skin allowed amniotes to develop relatively impermeable skin, thereby conserving water. **2.** Yes. Although snakes lack limbs, they descended from lizards with legs. Some snakes retain vestigial pelvic and leg bones, providing evidence of their descent from an ancestor with legs. **3.** Birds have weight-saving modifications, including the absence of teeth, a urinary bladder, and a second ovary in females. The wings and feathers are adaptations that facilitate flight, and so are efficient respiratory and circulatory systems that support a high metabolic rate.

4.



Under this convention, the reptiles would consist of all groups in Figure 34.24 except parareptiles and mammals.

### Concept Check 34.6

1. Monotremes lay eggs. Marsupials give birth to very small live young that attach to a nipple in the mother's pouch, where they complete development. Eutherians give birth to more developed live young. **2.** Hands and feet adapted for grasping, flat nails, large brain, forward-looking eyes on a flat face, parental care, and movable big toe and thumb. **3.** Mammals are endothermic, enabling them to live in a wide range of habitats. Milk provides young with a balanced set of nutrients, and hair and a layer of fat under the skin help mammals retain heat. Mammals have differentiated teeth, enabling them to eat many different kinds of food. Mammals also have relatively large brains, and many species are capable learners. Following the mass extinction at the end of the Cretaceous period, the absence of large terrestrial dinosaurs may have opened many new ecological niches to mammals, promoting an adaptive radiation. Continental drift also isolated many groups of mammals from one another, promoting the formation of many new species.

### Concept Check 34.7

1. Hominins are a clade within the ape clade that includes humans and all species more closely related to humans than other apes. The derived characters of

hominins include bipedal locomotion and relatively larger brains. **2.** In hominins, bipedal locomotion evolved long before large brain size. *Homo ergaster*, for example, was fully upright, bipedal, and as tall as modern humans, but its brain was significantly smaller than that of modern humans. **3.** Yes, both can be correct. *Homo sapiens* may have established populations outside of Africa as early as 115,000 years ago, as indicated by the fossil record. However, those populations may have left few or no descendants today. Instead, all living humans may have descended from Africans that spread from Africa roughly 50,000 years ago, as indicated by genetic data.

#### Summary of Key Concepts Questions

**34.1** Lancelets are the most basal group of living chordates, and as adults they have key derived characters of chordates. This suggests that the chordate common ancestor may have resembled a lancelet in having an anterior end with a mouth along with the following four derived characters: a notochord; a dorsal, hollow nerve cord; pharyngeal slits or clefts; and a muscular, post-anal tail. **34.2** Conodonts, among the earliest vertebrates in the fossil record, were very abundant for 300 million years. While jawless, their well-developed teeth provide early signs of bone formation. Other species of jawless vertebrates developed armor on the outside of their bodies, which probably helped protect them from predators. Like lampreys, these species had paired fins for locomotion and an inner ear with semi-circular canals that provided a sense of balance. There were many species of these armored jawless vertebrates, but they all became extinct by the close of the Devonian period, 359 million years ago. **34.3** The origin of jaws altered how fossil gnathostomes obtained food, which in turn had large effects on ecological interactions. Predators could use their jaws to grab prey or remove chunks of flesh, stimulating the evolution of increasingly sophisticated means of defense in prey species. Evidence for these changes can be found in the fossil record, which includes fossils of 10-m-long predators with remarkably powerful jaws, as well as lineages of well-defended prey species whose bodies were covered by armored plates.

**34.4** Amphibians require water for reproduction; their bodies can lose water rapidly through their moist, highly permeable skin; and amphibian eggs do not have a shell and hence are vulnerable to desiccation. **34.5** Birds are descended from theropod dinosaurs, and dinosaurs are nested within the archosaur lineage, one of the two main reptile lineages. Thus, the other living archosaur reptiles, the crocodilians, are more closely related to birds than they are to non-archosaur reptiles such as lizards. As a result, birds are considered reptiles. (Note that if reptiles were defined as excluding birds, the reptiles would not form a clade; instead, the reptiles would be a paraphyletic group.) **34.6** Mammals are members of a group of amniotes called synapsids. Early (nonmammalian) synapsids laid eggs and had a sprawling gait. Fossil evidence shows that mammalian features arose gradually over a period of more than 100 million years. For example, the jaw was modified over time in nonmammalian synapsids, eventually coming to resemble that of a mammal. By 180 million years ago, the first mammals had appeared. There were many species of early mammals, but most of them were small, and they were not abundant or dominant members of their community. Mammals did not rise to ecological dominance until after the extinction of the dinosaurs. **34.7** The fossil record shows that from 4.5 to 2.5 million years ago, a wide range of hominin species walked upright but had relatively small brain sizes. About 2.5 million years ago, the first members of genus *Homo* emerged. These species used tools and had larger brains than those of earlier hominins. Fossil evidence indicates that multiple members of our genus were alive at any given point in time. Furthermore, until about 1.3 million years ago, these various *Homo* species also coexisted with members of earlier hominin lineages, such as *Paranthropus*. The different hominins alive at the same periods of time varied in body size, body shape, brain size, dental morphology, and the capacity for tool use. Ultimately, except for *Homo sapiens*, all of these species became extinct. Thus, human evolution is viewed not as an evolutionary path leading to *H. sapiens*, but rather as an evolutionary tree with many branches—the only surviving lineage of which is our own.

#### Test Your Understanding

1. d   2. c   3. b   4. c   5. d   6. a

## Chapter 35

#### Figure Questions

**Figure 35.17** Pith and cortex are defined, respectively, as ground tissue that is internal and ground tissue that is external to vascular tissue. Since vascular bundles of monocot stems are scattered throughout the ground tissue, there is no clear distinction between internal and external relative to the vascular tissue.

**Figure 35.19** The vascular cambium produces growth that increases the diameter of a stem or root. The tissues that are exterior to the vascular cambium cannot keep pace with the growth because their cells no longer divide. As a result, these tissues rupture. **Figure 35.32** Every root epidermal cell would develop a root hair. **Figure 35.34** Another example of homeotic gene mutation is the mutation in a *Hox* gene that causes legs to form in place of antennae in *Drosophila* (see Figure 18.20). **Figure 35.35** The flower would consist of nothing but carpels.

#### Concept Check 35.1

1. The vascular tissue system connects leaves and roots, allowing sugars to move from leaves to roots in the phloem and allowing water and minerals to move to the leaves in the xylem. **2.** To get sufficient energy from photosynthesis, we would need lots of surface area exposed to the sun. This large surface-to-volume ratio, however, would create a new problem—evaporative water loss. We would have to be permanently connected to a water source—the soil, also our source of minerals. **3.** As plant cells enlarge, they typically form a huge central vacuole that contains a dilute,

watery sap. Central vacuoles enable plant cells to become large with only a minimal investment of new cytoplasm. The orientation of the cellulose microfibrils in plant cell walls affects the growth pattern of cells.

#### Concept Check 35.2

- Yes. In a woody plant, secondary growth is occurring in the older parts of the stem and root, while primary growth is occurring at the root and shoot tips.
- The largest, oldest leaves would be lowest on the shoot. Since they would probably be heavily shaded, they would not photosynthesize much regardless of their size. Determinate growth benefits the plant by keeping it from investing an ever-increasing amount of resources into organs that provide little photosynthetic product.
- No, the carrot roots will probably be smaller at the end of the second year because the food stored in the roots will be used to produce flowers, fruits, and seeds.

#### Concept Check 35.3

- In roots, primary growth occurs in three successive stages, moving away from the tip of the root: the zones of cell division, elongation, and differentiation. In shoots, it occurs at the tip of apical buds, with leaf primordia arising along the sides of an apical meristem. Most growth in length occurs in older internodes below the shoot tip.
- Because vertically oriented leaves, such as those of maize, can capture light equally well on both sides of the leaf, you would expect them to have mesophyll cells that are not differentiated into palisade and spongy layers. This is typically the case. Also, vertically oriented leaves usually have stomata on both leaf surfaces.
- Root hairs are cellular extensions that increase the surface area of the root epidermis, thereby enhancing the absorption of minerals and water. Microvilli are extensions that increase the absorption of nutrients by increasing the surface area of the gut.

#### Concept Check 35.4

- The sign will still be 2 m above the ground because this part of the tree is no longer growing in length (primary growth); it is now growing only in thickness (secondary growth).
- Stomata must be able to close because evaporation is much more intensive from leaves than from the trunks of woody trees as a result of the higher surface-to-volume ratio in leaves.
- Since there is little seasonal temperature variation in the tropics, the growth rings of a tree from the tropics would be difficult to discern unless the tree came from an area that had pronounced wet and dry seasons.
- The tree would die slowly. Girdling removes an entire ring of secondary phloem (part of the bark), completely preventing transport of sugars and starches from the shoots to the roots. After several weeks, the roots would have used all of their stored carbohydrate reserves and would die.

#### Concept Check 35.5

- Although all the living vegetative cells of a plant have the same genome, they develop different forms and functions because of differential gene expression.
- Plants show indeterminate growth; juvenile and mature phases are found on the same individual plant; and cell differentiation in plants is more dependent on final position than on lineage.
- One hypothesis is that tepals arise if *B* gene activity is present in all three of the outer whorls of the flower.

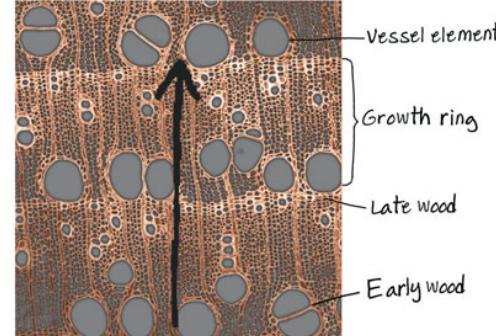
#### Summary of Key Concepts Questions

**35.1** Here are a few examples: The cuticle of leaves and stems protects these structures from desiccation. Collenchyma and sclerenchyma cells have thick walls that provide support for plants. Strong, branching root systems help anchor plants in the soil. **35.2** Primary growth arises from apical meristems and involves production and elongation of organs. Secondary growth arises from lateral meristems and adds to the diameter of roots and stems. **35.3** Lateral roots emerge from the pericycle and destroy plant cells as they emerge. In stems, branches arise from axillary buds and do not destroy any cells. **35.4** With the evolution of secondary growth, plants were able to grow taller and shade competitors. **35.5** The orientation of cellulose microfibrils in the innermost layers of the cell wall causes growth along one axis. Microtubules in the cell's outermost cytoplasm play a key role in regulating the axis of cell expansion because it is their orientation that determines the orientation of cellulose microfibrils.

#### Test Your Understanding

1. d   2. c   3. c   4. a   5. b   6. d   7. d

8.



## Chapter 36

### Figure Questions

**Figure 36.3** The leaves are being produced in a counterclockwise spiral.

**Figure 36.4** A higher leaf area index will not necessarily increase photosynthesis because of upper leaves shading lower leaves. **Figure 36.6** A proton pump inhibitor would depolarize (increase) the membrane potential because fewer  $H^+$  ions would be pumped out across the plasma membrane. The immediate effect of an inhibitor of the  $H^+$ /sucrose transporter would be to hyperpolarize (decrease) the membrane potential because fewer  $H^+$  ions would be leaking back into the cell through these cotransporters. An inhibitor of the  $H^+$ / $NO_3^-$  cotransporter would have no effect on the membrane potential because the simultaneous cotransport of a positively charged ion and a negatively charged ion has no net effect on charge difference across the membrane. An inhibitor of the  $K^+$  ion channels would decrease the membrane potential because additional positively charged ions would not be accumulating outside the cell. **Figure 36.8** The Caspary strip blocks water and minerals from moving between endodermal cells or moving around an endodermal cell via the cell's wall. Therefore, water and minerals must pass through an endodermal cell's plasma membrane. **Figure 36.17** Because the xylem is under negative pressure (tension), excising a stylet that had been inserted into a tracheid or vessel element would probably introduce air into the cell. No xylem sap would exude unless positive root pressure was predominant.

### Concept Check 36.1

- Vascular plants must transport minerals and water absorbed by the roots to all the other parts of the plant. They must also transport sugars from sites of production to sites of use.
- Many features of plant architecture affect self-shading, including leaf arrangement, leaf and stem orientation, and leaf area index.
- Increased stem elongation would raise the plant's upper leaves. Erect leaves and reduced lateral branching would make the plant less subject to shading by the encroaching neighbors.
- Pruning shoot tips removes apical dominance, resulting in lateral shoots (branches) growing from axillary buds (see Chapter 35). This branching produces a bushier plant with a higher leaf area index.
- Fungal hyphae are long, thin filaments that form a large, interwoven network in the soil. Their high surface-to-volume ratio is an adaptation that enhances the absorption of materials from the soil.

### Concept Check 36.2

- The cell's  $\Psi_p$  is 0.7 MPa. In a solution with a  $\Psi$  of -0.4 MPa, the cell's  $\Psi_p$  at equilibrium would be 0.3 MPa.
- The cell would still adjust to changes in its osmotic environment, but its responses would be slower. Although aquaporins do not affect the water potential gradient across membranes, they allow for more rapid osmotic adjustments.
- If tracheids and vessel elements were alive at maturity, their cytoplasm would impede water movement, preventing rapid long-distance transport.
- The protoplasts would burst. Because the cytoplasm has many dissolved solutes, water would enter the protoplast continuously without reaching equilibrium. (When present, the cell wall prevents rupturing by limiting expansion of the protoplast.)

### Concept Check 36.3

- Because water-conducting xylem cells are dead at maturity and form essentially hollow tubes, they offer little resistance to water flow, and their thick walls prevent the cells from collapsing from the negative pressure inside.
- At dawn, a drop is exuded from the rooted stump because the xylem is under positive pressure due to root pressure. At noon, the xylem is under negative pressure (tension) when it is cut, and the xylem sap is pulled back into the rooted stump. Root pressure cannot keep pace with the increased rate of transpiration at noon.
- The endodermis regulates the passage of water-soluble solutes by requiring all such molecules to cross a selectively permeable membrane. Presumably, the inhibitor cannot cross the membrane and therefore never reaches the plant's photosynthetic cells.
- Perhaps greater root mass helps compensate for the lower water permeability of the plasma membranes.
- The Caspary strip and tight junctions both prevent movement of fluid between cells.

### Concept Check 36.4

- Stomatal opening at dawn is controlled mainly by light,  $CO_2$  concentration, and a circadian rhythm. Environmental stresses such as drought, high temperature, and wind can stimulate stomata to close during the day. Water deficiency can trigger release of the plant hormone abscisic acid, which signals guard cells to close stomata.
- The activation of the proton pumps of stomatal cells would cause the guard cells to take up  $K^+$ . The increased turgor of the guard cells would lock the stomata open and lead to extreme evaporation from the leaf.
- After the flowers are cut, transpiration from any leaves and from the petals (which are modified leaves) will continue to draw water up the xylem. If cut flowers are transferred directly to a vase, air pockets in xylem vessels prevent delivery of water from the vase to the flowers. Cutting stems again underwater, a few centimeters from the original cut, will sever the xylem above the air pocket. The water droplets prevent another air pocket from forming while the flowers are transferred to a vase.
- Water molecules are in constant motion, traveling at different speeds. If water molecules gain enough energy, the most energetic molecules near the liquid's surface will have sufficient speed, and therefore sufficient kinetic energy, to leave the liquid in the form of gaseous molecules (water vapor). As the molecules with the highest kinetic energy leave the liquid, the average kinetic energy of the remaining liquid decreases. Because a liquid's temperature is directly related to the average kinetic energy of its molecules, the temperature drops as evaporation proceeds.

### Concept Check 36.5

1. In both cases, the long-distance transport is a bulk flow driven by a pressure difference at opposite ends of tubes. Pressure is generated at the source end of a sieve tube by the loading of sugar and resulting osmotic flow of water into the phloem, and this pressure *pushes* sap from the source end to the sink end of the tube. In contrast, transpiration generates a negative pressure potential (tension) that *pulls* the ascent of xylem sap.

2. The main sources are fully grown leaves (producing sugar by photosynthesis) and fully developed storage organs (producing sugar by breakdown of starch). Roots, buds, stems, expanding leaves, and fruits are powerful sinks because they are actively growing. A storage organ may be a sink in the summer when accumulating carbohydrates but a source in the spring when breaking down starch into sugar for growing shoot tips.

3. Positive pressure, whether it be in the xylem when root pressure predominates or in the sieve-tube elements of the phloem, requires active transport. Most long-distance transport in the xylem depends on bulk flow driven by the negative pressure potential generated ultimately by the evaporation of water from the leaf and does not require living cells.

4. The spiral slash prevents optimal bulk flow of the phloem sap to the root sinks. Therefore, more phloem sap can move from the source leaves to the fruit sinks, making them sweeter.

### Concept Check 36.6

- Plasmodesmata, unlike gap junctions, have the ability to pass RNA, proteins, and viruses from cell to cell.
- Long-distance signaling is critical for the integrated functioning of all large organisms, but the speed of such signaling is much less critical to plants because their responses to the environment, unlike those of animals, do not typically involve rapid movements.
- Although this strategy would eliminate the systemic spread of viral infections, it would also severely impact the development of the plants.

### Summary of Key Concepts Questions

**36.1** Plants with tall shoots and elevated leaf canopies generally had an advantage over shorter competitors. A consequence of the selective pressure for tall shoots was the further separation of leaves from roots. This separation created problems for the transport of materials between root and shoot systems. Plants with xylem cells were more successful at supplying their shoot systems with soil resources (water and minerals). Similarly, those with phloem cells were more successful at supplying sugar sinks with carbohydrates.

**36.2** Xylem sap is usually pulled up the plant by transpiration, much more often than it is pushed up the plant by root pressure.

**36.3** Hydrogen bonds are necessary for the cohesion of water molecules to each other and for the adhesion of water to other materials, such as cell walls. Both adhesion and cohesion of water molecules are involved in the ascent of xylem sap under conditions of negative pressure.

**36.4** Although stomata account for most of the water lost from plants, they are necessary for exchange of gases—for example, for the uptake of carbon dioxide needed for photosynthesis. The loss of water through stomata also drives the long-distance transport of water that brings soil nutrients from roots to the rest of the plant.

**36.5** Although the movement of phloem sap depends on bulk flow, the pressure gradient that drives phloem transport depends on the osmotic uptake of water in response to the loading of sugars into sieve-tube elements at sugar sources. Phloem loading depends on  $H^+$  cotransport processes that ultimately depend on  $H^+$  gradients established by active  $H^+$  pumping.

**36.6** Electrical signaling, cytoplasmic pH, cytoplasmic  $Ca^{2+}$  concentration, and viral movement proteins all affect symplastic communication, as do developmental changes in the number of plasmodesmata.

### Test Your Understanding

1. a 2. b 3. b 4. c 5. b 6. c 7. a 8. d

## Chapter 37

### Figure Questions

**Figure 37.3** Anions. Because cations are bound to soil particles, they are less likely to be lost from the soil following heavy rains.

**Table 37.1** During photosynthesis,  $CO_2$  is fixed into carbohydrates, which contribute to the dry mass. In cellular respiration,  $O_2$  is reduced to  $H_2O$  and does not contribute to the dry mass.

**Figure 37.11** The legume plants benefit because the bacteria fix nitrogen that is absorbed by their roots. The bacteria benefit because they acquire photosynthetic products from the plants.

**Figure 37.12** All three plant tissue systems are affected. Root hairs (dermal tissue) are modified to allow *Rhizobium* penetration. The cortex (ground tissue) and pericycle (vascular tissue) proliferate during nodule formation. The vascular tissue of the nodule connects to the vascular cylinder of the root to allow for efficient nutrient exchange.

### Concept Check 37.1

- Overwatering deprives roots of oxygen. Overfertilizing is wasteful and can lead to soil salinization and water pollution.
- As lawn clippings decompose, they restore mineral nutrients to the soil. If they are removed, the minerals lost from the soil must be replaced by fertilization.
- Because of their small size and negative charge, clay particles would increase the number of binding sites for cations and water molecules and would therefore increase cation exchange and water retention in the soil.
- Due to hydrogen bonding between water molecules, water expands when it freezes, and this causes mechanical fracturing of rocks. Water also coheres to many objects, and this cohesion combined with other forces, such as gravity, can help tug particles from rock. Finally, water, because it is polar, is an excellent solvent that allows many substances, including ions, to become dissolved in solution.

**Concept Check 37.2**

**1.** No, because even though macronutrients are required in greater amounts, all essential elements are necessary for the plant to complete its life cycle. **2.** No. The fact that the addition of an element results in an increase in the growth rate of a crop does not mean that the element is strictly required for the plant to complete its life cycle. **3.** Inadequate aeration of the roots of hydroponically grown plants would promote alcohol fermentation, which uses more energy and may lead to the accumulation of ethanol, a toxic byproduct of fermentation.

**Concept Check 37.3**

**1.** The rhizosphere is a narrow zone in the soil immediately adjacent to living roots. This zone is especially rich in both organic and inorganic nutrients and has a microbial population that is many times greater than the bulk of the soil. **2.** Soil bacteria and mycorrhizae enhance plant nutrition by making certain minerals more available to plants. For example, many types of soil bacteria are involved in the nitrogen cycle, and the hyphae of mycorrhizae provide a large surface area for the absorption of nutrients, particularly phosphate ions. **3.** Mixotrophy refers to the strategy of using photosynthesis and heterotrophy for nutrition. Euglenids are well-known mixotrophic protists. **4.** Saturating rainfall may deplete the soil of oxygen. A lack of soil oxygen would inhibit nitrogen fixation by the peanut root nodules and decrease the nitrogen available to the plants. Alternatively, heavy rain may leach nitrate from the soil. A symptom of nitrogen deficiency is yellowing of older leaves.

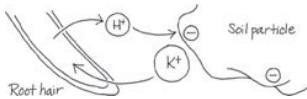
**Summary of Key Concepts Questions**

**37.1** The term *ecosystem* refers to the communities of organisms within a given area and their interactions with the physical environment around them. Soil is teeming with many communities of organisms, including bacteria, fungi, animals, and the root systems of plants. The vigor of these individual communities depends on nonliving factors in the soil environment, such as minerals, oxygen, and water, as well as on interactions, both positive and negative, between different communities of organisms. **37.2** No. Plants can complete their life cycle when grown hydroponically, that is, in aerated salt solutions containing the proper ratios of all the minerals needed by plants. **37.3** No. Some parasitic plants obtain their energy by siphoning off carbon nutrients from other organisms.

**Test Your Understanding**

1. b   2. b   3. a   4. d   5. b   6. b   7. d   8. c   9. d

10.

**Chapter 38****Figure Questions**

**Figure 38.5** Having a specific pollinator is more efficient because less pollen gets delivered to flowers of the wrong species. However, it is also a risky strategy: If the pollinator population suffers to an unusual degree from predation, disease, or climate change, then the plant may not be able to produce seeds. **Figure 38.8** In addition to having a single cotyledon, monocots have leaves with parallel leaf venation, scattered vascular bundles in their stems, a fibrous root system, floral parts in threes or multiples of threes, and pollen grains with only one opening. In contrast, dicots have two cotyledons, netlike leaf venation, vascular bundles in a ring, taproots, floral parts in fours or fives or multiples thereof, and pollen grains with three openings. **Figure 38.9** Beans use a hypocotyl hook to push through the soil. The delicate leaves and shoot apical meristem are also protected by being sandwiched between two large cotyledons. The coleoptile of maize seedlings helps protect the emerging leaves. **Figure 38.18** The crown gall bacterium (*Agrobacterium tumefaciens*) normally causes cancer-like growths in susceptible plants. *Agrobacterium* inserts its own genes into plant cells by means of plasmids. These plasmids have been genetically engineered to retain their ability to insert genes into plant cells without causing cancerous growth.

**Concept Check 38.1**

**1.** In angiosperms, pollination is the transfer of pollen from an anther to a stigma. Fertilization is the fusion of the egg and sperm to form the zygote; it cannot occur until after the growth of the pollen tube from the pollen grain. **2.** Seed dormancy prevents the premature germination of seeds. A seed will germinate only when the environmental conditions are optimal for the survival of its embryo as a young seedling. **3.** Long styles help to weed out pollen grains that are genetically inferior and not capable of successfully growing long pollen tubes. **4.** No. The haploid (gametophyte) generation of plants is multicellular and arises from spores. The haploid phase of the animal life cycles is a single-celled gamete (egg or sperm) that arises directly from meiosis: There are no spores.

**Concept Check 38.2**

**1.** Flowering plants can avoid self-fertilization by self-incompatibility, having male and female flowers on separate plants (dioecious species), or having stamens and styles of different heights on separate plants ("pin" and "thrum" flowers). **2.** Asexually propagated crops lack genetic diversity. Genetically diverse populations are less likely to become extinct in the face of an epidemic because there is a greater likelihood that a few individuals in the population are resistant.

**3.** In the short term, selfing may be advantageous in a population that is so dispersed and sparse that pollen delivery is unreliable. In the long term, however, selfing is an evolutionary dead end because it leads to a loss of genetic diversity that may preclude adaptive evolution.

**Concept Check 38.3**

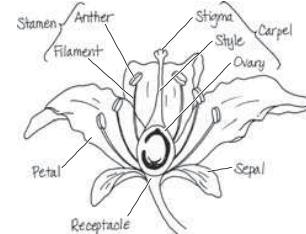
**1.** Traditional breeding and genetic engineering both involve artificial selection for desired traits. However, genetic engineering techniques facilitate faster gene transfer and are not limited to transferring genes between closely related varieties or species. **2.** *Bt* maize suffers less insect damage; therefore, *Bt* maize plants are less likely to be infected by fumonisin-producing fungi that infect plants through wounds. **3.** In such species, engineering the transgene into the chloroplast DNA would not prevent its escape in pollen; such a method requires that the chloroplast DNA be found only in the egg. An entirely different method of preventing transgene escape would therefore be needed, such as male sterility, apomixis, or self-pollinating closed flowers.

**Summary of Key Concepts Questions**

**38.1** After pollination and fertilization, a flower changes into a fruit. The petals, sepals, and stamens typically fall off the flower. The stigma of the pistil withers, and the ovary begins to swell. The ovules (embryonic seeds) inside the ovary begin to mature. **38.2** Asexual reproduction can be advantageous in a stable environment because individual plants that are well suited to that environment pass on all their genes to offspring. Also, asexual reproduction generally results in offspring that are less fragile than the seedlings produced by sexual reproduction. However, sexual reproduction offers the advantage of dispersal of tough seeds. Moreover, sexual reproduction produces genetic variety, which may be advantageous in an unstable environment. The likelihood is better that at least one offspring of sexual reproduction will survive in a changed environment. **38.3** "Golden Rice" has been engineered to produce more vitamin A, thereby raising the nutritional value of rice. A protoxin gene from a soil bacterium has been engineered into *Bt* maize. This protoxin is lethal to invertebrates but harmless to vertebrates. *Bt* crops require less pesticide spraying and have lower levels of fungal infection. The nutritional value of cassava is being increased in many ways by genetic engineering. Enriched levels of iron and beta-carotene (a vitamin A precursor) have been achieved, and cyanide-producing chemicals have been almost eliminated from the roots.

**Test Your Understanding**

1. a   2. c   3. b   4. c   5. d   6. d   7. d

**Chapter 39****Figure Questions**

**Figure 39.4** Panel B in Figure 11.17 shows a branching signal transduction pathway that resembles the branching phytochrome-dependent pathway involved in de-etiolation. **Figure 39.5** To determine which wavelengths of light are most effective in phototropism, you could use a glass prism to split white light into its component colors and see which colors cause the quickest bending (the answer is blue; see Figure 39.15). **Figure 39.6** No. Polar auxin transport depends on the distribution of auxin transport proteins at the basal ends of cells. **Figure 39.16** Yes. The white light, which contains red light, would stimulate seed germination in all treatments. **Figure 39.20** The short-day plant would not flower. The long-day plant would flower. **Figure 39.21** If this were true, florigen would be an inhibitor of flowering, not an inducer. **Figure 39.27** Photosynthetic adaptations can occur at the molecular level, as is apparent in the fact that C<sub>3</sub> plants use rubisco to fix carbon dioxide initially, whereas C<sub>4</sub> and CAM plants use PEP carboxylase. An adaptation at the tissue level is that plants have different stomatal densities based on their genotype and environmental conditions. At the organismal level, plants alter their shoot architectures to make photosynthesis more efficient. For example, self-pruning removes branches and leaves that respiration more than they photosynthesize.

**Concept Check 39.1**

**1.** Dark-grown seedlings are etiolated: They have long stems, underdeveloped root systems, and unexpanded leaves, and their shoots lack chlorophyll. Etiolated growth is beneficial to seeds sprouting under the dark conditions they would encounter underground. By devoting more energy to stem elongation and less to leaf expansion and root growth, a plant increases the likelihood that the shoot will reach the sunlight before its stored foods run out. **2.** Cycloheximide should inhibit de-etiolation by preventing the synthesis of new proteins necessary for de-etiolation. **3.** No. Applying Viagra, like injecting cyclic GMP as described in the text, should cause only a partial de-etiolation response. Full de-etiolation would require activation of the calcium branch of the signal transduction pathway.

**Concept Check 39.2**

**1.** Fusicoccin's ability to cause an increase in plasma H<sup>+</sup> pump activity has an auxin-like effect and promotes stem cell elongation. **2.** The plant will exhibit a constitutive triple response. Because the kinase that normally prevents the triple response is dysfunctional, the plant will undergo the triple response regardless of whether ethylene is present or the ethylene receptor is functional. **3.** Since ethylene often stimulates its own synthesis, it is under positive-feedback regulation.

**Concept Check 39.3**

**1.** Not necessarily. Many environmental factors, such as temperature and light, change over a 24-hour period in the field. To determine whether the enzyme is under circadian control, a scientist would have to demonstrate that its activity oscillates even when environmental conditions are held constant. **2.** It is impossible to say. To establish that this species is a short-day plant, it would be necessary to establish the critical night length for flowering and that this species only flowers when the night is longer than the critical night length. **3.** According to the action spectrum of photosynthesis, red and blue light are the most effective in photosynthesis. Thus, it is not surprising that plants assess their light environment using blue- and red-light-absorbing photoreceptors.

**Concept Check 39.4**

**1.** A plant that overproduces ABA would undergo less evaporative cooling because its stomata would not open as widely. **2.** Plants close to the aisles may be more subject to mechanical stresses caused by passing workers and air currents. The plants nearer to the center of the bench may also be taller as a result of shading and less evaporative stress. **3.** No. Because root caps are involved in sensing gravity, roots that have their root caps removed are almost completely insensitive to gravity.

**Concept Check 39.5**

**1.** Some insects increase plants' productivity by eating harmful insects or aiding in pollination. **2.** Mechanical damage breaches a plant's first line of defense against infection, its protective dermal tissue. **3.** No. Pathogens that kill their hosts would soon run out of victims and might themselves go extinct. **4.** Perhaps the breeze dilutes the local concentration of a volatile defense compound that the plants produce.

**Summary of Key Concepts Questions**

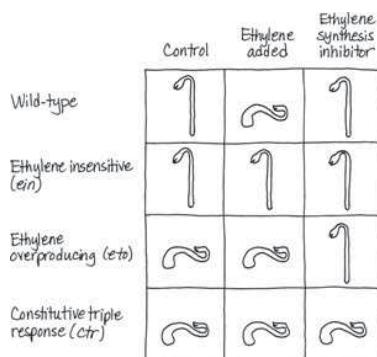
**39.1** Signal transduction pathways often activate protein kinases, enzymes that phosphorylate other proteins. Protein kinases can directly activate certain preexisting enzymes by phosphorylating them, or they can regulate gene transcription (and enzyme production) by phosphorylating specific transcription factors.

**39.2** Yes, there is truth to the old adage that one bad apple spoils the whole bunch. Ethylene, a gaseous hormone that stimulates ripening, is produced by damaged, infected, or overripe fruits. Ethylene can diffuse to healthy fruit in the "bunch" and stimulate their rapid ripening. **39.3** Plant physiologists proposed the existence of a floral-promoting factor (florigen) based on the fact that a plant induced to flower could induce flowering in a second plant to which it was grafted, even though the second plant was not in an environment that would normally induce flowering in that species. **39.4** Plants subjected to drought stress are often more resistant to freezing stress because the two types of stress are quite similar. Freezing of water in the extracellular spaces causes free water concentrations outside the cell to decrease. This, in turn, causes free water to leave the cell by osmosis, leading to the dehydration of cytoplasm, much like what is seen in drought stress.

**39.5** Chewing insects make plants more susceptible to pathogen invasion by disrupting the waxy cuticle of shoots, thereby creating an opening for infection. Moreover, substances released from damaged cells can serve as nutrients for the invading pathogens.

**Test Your Understanding**

1. b   2. c   3. d   4. e   5. b   6. b   7. c  
8.

**Chapter 40****Figure Questions**

**Figure 40.4** Such exchange surfaces are internal in the sense that they are inside the body. However, they are also continuous with openings on the external body surface that contact the environment. **Figure 40.8** The stimuli (gray boxes) are the room temperature increasing in the top loop or decreasing in the bottom loop.

The responses could include the heater turning off and the temperature decreasing in the top loop and the heater turning on and the temperature increasing in the bottom loop. The sensor/control center is the thermostat. The air conditioner would form a second control circuit, cooling the house when air temperature exceeded the set point. Such opposing, or antagonistic, pairs of control circuits increase the effectiveness of a homeostatic mechanism. **Figure 40.12** Convection is occurring as the movement of the fan passes air over your skin. Evaporation may also be occurring if your skin is damp with sweat. You also radiate a small amount of heat to the surrounding air at all times. **Figure 40.16** If a female Burmese python were not incubating eggs, her oxygen consumption would decrease with decreasing temperature, as for any other ectotherm. **Figure 40.17** The ice water would cool tissues in your head, including blood that would then circulate throughout your body. This effect would accelerate the return to a normal body temperature. If, however, the ice water reached the eardrum and cooled the blood vessel that supplies the hypothalamus, the hypothalamic thermostat would respond by inhibiting sweating and constricting blood vessels in the skin, slowing cooling elsewhere in the body. **Figure 40.18** The transport of nutrients across membranes and the synthesis of RNA and protein are coupled to ATP hydrolysis. These processes proceed spontaneously because there is an overall drop in free energy, with the excess energy given off as heat. Similarly, less than half of the free energy in glucose is captured in the coupled reactions of cellular respiration. The remainder of the energy is released as heat. **Figure 40.21** Nothing. Although genes that show a circadian variation in expression during euthermia exhibit constant RNA levels during hibernation, a gene that shows constant expression during hibernation might also show constant expression during euthermia.

**Concept Check 40.1**

**1.** All types of epithelia consist of cells that line a surface, are tightly packed, are situated on top of a basal lamina, and form an active and protective interface with the external environment. **2.** An oxygen molecule must cross a plasma membrane when entering the body at an exchange surface in the respiratory system, in both entering and exiting the circulatory system, and in moving from the interstitial fluid to the cytoplasm of the body cell. **3.** You need the nervous system to perceive the danger and provoke a split-second muscular response to keep from falling. The nervous system, however, does not make a direct connection with blood vessels or glucose-storing cells in the liver. Instead, the nervous system triggers the release of a hormone (called epinephrine, or adrenaline) by the endocrine system, bringing about a change in these tissues in just a few seconds.

**Concept Check 40.2**

**1.** In thermoregulation, the product of the pathway (a change in temperature) decreases pathway activity by reducing the stimulus. In an enzyme-catalyzed biosynthetic process, the product of the pathway (in this case, isoleucine) inhibits the pathway that generated it. **2.** You would want to put the thermostat close to where you would be spending time, where it would be protected from environmental perturbations, such as direct sunshine, and not right in the path of the output of the heating system. Similarly, the sensors for homeostasis located in the human brain are separated from environmental influences and can monitor conditions in a vital and sensitive tissue. **3.** In convergent evolution, the same biological trait arises independently in two or more species. Gene analysis can provide evidence for an independent origin. In particular, if the genes responsible for the trait in one species lack significant sequence similarity to the corresponding genes in another species, scientists conclude that there is a separate genetic basis for the trait in the two species and thus an independent origin. In the case of circadian rhythms, the clock genes in cyanobacteria appear unrelated to those in humans.

**Concept Check 40.3**

**1.** "Wind chill" involves heat loss through convection, as the moving air contributes to heat loss from the skin surface. **2.** The hummingbird, being a very small endotherm, has a very high metabolic rate. If by absorbing sunlight certain flowers warm their nectar, a hummingbird feeding on these flowers is saved the metabolic expense of warming the nectar to its body temperature. **3.** To raise body temperature to the higher range of fever, the hypothalamus triggers heat generation by muscular contractions, or shivering. The person with a fever may in fact say that they feel cold, even though their body temperature is above normal.

**Concept Check 40.4**

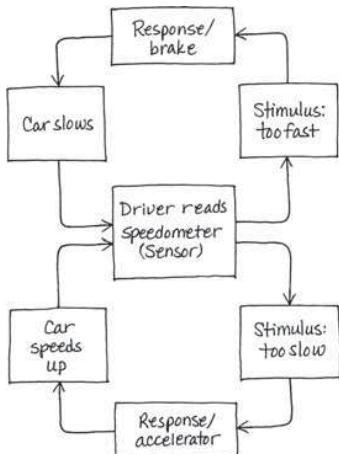
**1.** The mouse would consume oxygen at a higher rate because it is an endotherm, so its basal metabolic rate is higher than the ectothermic lizard's standard metabolic rate. **2.** The house cat; smaller animals have a higher metabolic rate per unit body mass and a greater demand for food per unit body mass. **3.** The alligator's body temperature would decrease along with the air temperature. Its metabolic rate would therefore also decrease as chemical reactions slowed. In contrast, the lion's body temperature would not change. Its metabolic rate would increase as it shivered and produced heat to keep its body temperature constant.

**Summary of Key Concepts Questions**

**40.1** Animals exchange materials with their environment across their body surface, and a spherical shape has the minimum surface area per unit volume. As body size increases, the ratio of surface area to body volume decreases. **40.2** No; an animal's internal environment fluctuates slightly around set points or within normal ranges. Homeostasis is a dynamic state. Furthermore, there are sometimes programmed changes in set points, such as those resulting in radical increases in hormone levels at particular times in development. **40.3** Heat exchange across the skin is a primary mechanism for the regulation of body core temperature, with the result that the skin is cooler than the body core. **40.4** Small animals have a higher BMR per unit mass and therefore consume more oxygen per unit mass than large animals. A higher breathing rate is required to support this increased oxygen consumption.

**Test Your Understanding**

1. b 2. c 3. a 4. b 5. c 6. b 7. d  
8.

**Chapter 41****Figure Questions**

**Figure 41.4 What if?** As in the described study, the researchers needed a sample size large enough that they could expect a significant number of neural tube defects in the control group. The information needed to determine the appropriate sample size was the frequency of neural tube defects in first-time pregnancies in the general population. **Figure 41.12** Since enzymes are proteins, and proteins are hydrolyzed in the small intestine, the digestive enzymes in that compartment need to be resistant to enzymatic cleavage other than the cleavage required to activate them. **Figure 41.13** None. Since digestion is completed in the small intestine, tapeworms simply absorb predigested nutrients through their large body surface. **Figure 41.21** Both insulin and glucagon are involved in negative feedback circuits.

**Concept Check 41.1**

1. The only essential amino acids are those that an animal cannot synthesize from other molecules. 2. Many vitamins serve as enzyme cofactors, which, like enzymes themselves, are unchanged by the chemical reactions in which they participate. Therefore, only very small amounts of vitamins are needed. 3. To identify the essential nutrient missing from an animal's diet, a researcher could supplement the diet with individual nutrients and determine which nutrient eliminates the signs of malnutrition.

**Concept Check 41.2**

1. A gastrovascular cavity is a digestive pouch with a single opening that functions in both ingestion and elimination; an alimentary canal is a digestive tube with a separate mouth and anus at opposite ends. 2. As long as nutrients are within the cavity of the alimentary canal, they are in a compartment that is continuous with the outside environment via the mouth and anus and have not yet crossed a membrane to enter the body. 3. Just as food remains outside the body in a digestive tract, gasoline moves from the fuel tank to the engine, and waste products exit through the exhaust without ever entering the passenger compartment of the automobile. In addition, gasoline, like food, is broken down in a specialized compartment, so that the rest of the automobile (or body) is protected from disassembly. In both cases, high-energy fuels are consumed, complex molecules are broken down into simpler ones, and waste products are eliminated.

**Concept Check 41.3**

1. Because parietal cells in the stomach pump hydrogen ions into the stomach lumen where they combine with chloride ions to form HCl, a proton pump inhibitor reduces the acidity of chyme and thus the irritation that occurs when chyme enters the esophagus. 2. By releasing sugars from starch or glycogen in the mouth, amylase might allow us to recognize foods that provide a ready source of energy. 3. Proteins would be denatured and digested into peptides. Further digestion, to individual amino acids, would require enzymatic secretions found in the small intestine. No digestion of carbohydrates or lipids would occur.

**Concept Check 41.4**

1. The increased time for transit through the alimentary canal allows for more extensive processing, and the increased surface area of the canal provides greater opportunity for absorption. 2. A mammal's digestive system provides mutualistic microbes with an environment that is protected against other microbes by saliva and gastric juice, that is held at a constant temperature conducive to enzyme action, and that provides a steady source of nutrients. 3. For the yogurt treatment to be effective, the bacteria from yogurt would have to establish a mutualistic relationship with the small intestine, where disaccharides are broken down and sugars are absorbed. Conditions in the small intestine are likely to be very different from

those in a yogurt culture. The bacteria might be killed before they reach the small intestine, or they might not be able to grow there in sufficient numbers to aid in digestion.

**Concept Check 41.5**

1. Over the long term, the body stores excess calories in fat, whether those calories come from fat, carbohydrate, or protein in food. 2. In normal individuals, leptin levels decline during fasting. Individuals in the group with low levels of leptin are likely to be defective in leptin production, so leptin levels would remain low regardless of food intake. Individuals in the group with high leptin levels are likely to be defective in responding to leptin, but they still should shut off leptin production as fat stores are used up. 3. The excess production of insulin will cause blood glucose levels to decrease below normal physiological levels. It will also trigger glycogen synthesis in the liver, further decreasing blood glucose levels. However, low blood glucose levels will stimulate the release of glucagon from alpha cells in the pancreas, which will trigger glycogen breakdown. Thus, there will be antagonistic effects in the liver.

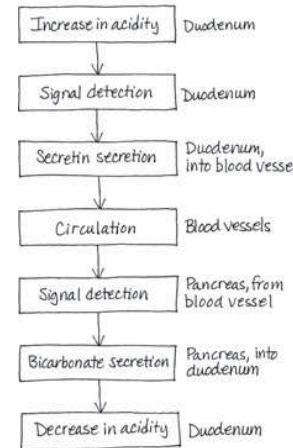
**Summary of Key Concepts Questions**

**41.1** Since the cofactor is necessary in all animals, those animals that do not require it in their diet must be able to synthesize it from other organic molecules. **41.2** A liquid diet containing glucose, amino acids, and other building blocks could be ingested and absorbed without the need for mechanical or chemical digestion. **41.3** The small intestine has a much larger surface area than the stomach. **41.4** The assortment of teeth in our mouth and the short length of our cecum suggest that our ancestors' digestive systems were not specialized for digesting plant material. **41.5** When mealtime arrives, nervous inputs from the brain signal the stomach to prepare to digest food through secretions and churning.

**Test Your Understanding**

1. b 2. a 3. b 4. c 5. d 6. b

7.

**Chapter 42****Figure Questions**

**Figure 42.2** Although gas exchange might be improved by a steady, one-way flow of fluid, there would likely be inadequate time for food to be digested and nutrients absorbed if fluid flowed through the cavity in this manner. **Figure 42.8** Each feature of the ECC recording, such as the sharp upward spike, occurs once per cardiac cycle. Using the x-axis to measure the time in seconds between successive spikes and dividing that number into 60 would yield the heart rate as the number of cycles per minute. **Figure 42.20** The three main lineages are Deuterostomia, Lophotrochozoa, and Ecdysozoa. All three are represented by the animals shown in Figure 42.22: Polychaetes (phylum Annelida) are lophotrochozoans, crayfish (phylum Arthropoda) are ecdysozoans, and sea stars (phylum Echinodermata) are deuterostomes. **Figure 42.24** The reduction in surface tension results from the presence of surfactant. Therefore, for all the infants who had died of RDS, you would expect the amount of surfactant to be near zero. For infants who had died of other causes, you would expect the amount of surfactant to be near zero for body masses less than 1,200 g but much greater than zero for body masses above 1,200 g. **Figure 42.27** Since exhalation is largely passive, the recoil of the elastic fibers in alveoli helps force air out of the lungs. When alveoli lose their elasticity, as occurs in the disease emphysema, less air is exhaled. Because more air is left in the lungs, less fresh air can be inhaled. With a smaller volume of air exchanged, there is a decrease in the partial pressure gradient that drives gas exchange.

**Figure 42.28** Breathing at a rate greater than that needed to meet metabolic demand (hyperventilation) would lower blood CO<sub>2</sub> levels. Sensors in major blood vessels and the medulla would signal the breathing control center to decrease the rate of contraction of the diaphragm and rib muscles, decreasing the breathing rate

and restoring normal CO<sub>2</sub> levels in the blood and other tissues. **Figure 42.29** The resulting increase in tidal volume would enhance ventilation within the lungs, increasing P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> and decreasing P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> in the alveoli.

#### Concept Check 42.1

**1.** In both an open circulatory system and a fountain, fluid is pumped through a tube and then returns to the pump after collecting in a pool. **2.** The ability to shut off blood supply to the lungs when the animal is submerged. **3.** The O<sub>2</sub> content would be abnormally low because some oxygen-depleted blood returned to the right atrium from the systemic circuit would mix with the oxygen-rich blood in the left atrium.

#### Concept Check 42.2

**1.** The pulmonary veins carry blood that has just passed through capillary beds in the lungs, where it accumulated O<sub>2</sub>. The venae cavae carry blood that has just passed through capillary beds in the rest of the body, where it lost O<sub>2</sub> to the tissues. **2.** The delay allows the atria to empty completely, filling ventricles fully before they contract. **3.** The heart, like any other muscle, becomes stronger through regular exercise. You would expect a stronger heart to have a greater stroke volume, which would allow for the decrease in heart rate.

#### Concept Check 42.3

**1.** The large total cross-sectional area of the capillaries. **2.** An increase in blood pressure and cardiac output combined with the diversion of more blood to the skeletal muscles would increase the capacity for action by increasing the rate of blood circulation and delivering more O<sub>2</sub> and nutrients to the skeletal muscles. **3.** Additional hearts could be used to improve blood return from the legs. However, it might be difficult to coordinate the activity of multiple hearts and to maintain adequate blood flow to hearts far from the gas exchange organs.

#### Concept Check 42.4

**1.** An increase in the number of white blood cells (leukocytes) may indicate that the person is combating an infection. **2.** Clotting factors do not initiate clotting but are essential steps in the clotting process. **3.** The chest pain results from inadequate blood flow in coronary arteries. Vasodilation promoted by nitric oxide from nitroglycerin increases blood flow, providing the heart muscle with additional oxygen and thus relieving the pain. **4.** When a mutant allele is codominant with the wild-type allele, the phenotype of heterozygotes is intermediate between that of wild-type and mutant homozygotes. Therefore, in the presence of wild-type Hb, the aggregation of Hb<sup>s</sup> that causes sickling must be significantly reduced. Based on this fact, some therapies for sickle-cell disease are aimed at boosting adult expression of another hemoglobin gene in the body, such as that normally expressed only in the fetus. **5.** Embryonic stem cells are pluripotent rather than multipotent, meaning that they can give rise to many rather than a few different cell types.

#### Concept Check 42.5

**1.** Their interior position helps them stay moist. If the respiratory surfaces of lungs extended out into the terrestrial environment, they would quickly dry out, and diffusion of O<sub>2</sub> and CO<sub>2</sub> across these surfaces would stop. **2.** Earthworms need to keep their skin moist for gas exchange, but they need air outside this moist layer. If they stay in their waterlogged tunnels after a heavy rain, they will suffocate because they cannot get as much O<sub>2</sub> from water as from air. **3.** In the gills of fishes, water passes over the gills in the direction opposite to that of blood flowing through the gill capillaries, maximizing the extraction of oxygen from the water along the length of the exchange surface. Similarly, in the extremities of some vertebrates, blood flows in opposite directions in neighboring veins and arteries; this counter-current arrangement maximizes the recapture of heat from blood leaving the body core in arteries, which is important for thermoregulation in cold environments.

#### Concept Check 42.6

**1.** An increase in blood CO<sub>2</sub> concentration causes an increase in the rate of CO<sub>2</sub> diffusion into the cerebrospinal fluid, where the CO<sub>2</sub> combines with water to form carbonic acid. Dissociation of carbonic acid releases hydrogen ions, decreasing the pH of the cerebrospinal fluid. **2.** Increased heart rate increases the rate at which CO<sub>2</sub>-rich blood is delivered to the lungs, where CO<sub>2</sub> is removed. **3.** A hole would allow air to enter the space between the inner and outer layers of the double membrane, resulting in a condition called a pneumothorax. The two layers would no longer stick together, and the lung on the side with the hole would collapse and cease functioning.

#### Concept Check 42.7

**1.** Differences in partial pressure; the net diffusion of gases occurs from a region of higher partial pressure to a region of lower partial pressure. **2.** The Bohr shift causes hemoglobin to release more O<sub>2</sub> at a lower pH, such as found in the vicinity of tissues with high rates of cellular respiration and CO<sub>2</sub> release. **3.** The doctor is assuming that the rapid breathing is the body's response to low blood pH. Metabolic acidosis, the lowering of blood pH as a result of metabolism, can have many causes, including complications of certain types of diabetes, shock (extremely low blood pressure), and poisoning.

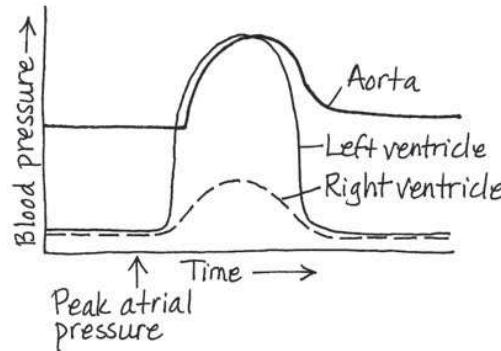
#### Summary of Key Concepts Questions

**42.1** In a closed circulatory system, an ATP-driven muscular pump generally moves fluids in one direction on a scale of millimeters to meters. Exchange between cells and their environment relies on diffusion, which involves random movements of molecules. Concentration gradients of molecules across exchange surfaces can drive rapid net diffusion on a scale of 1 mm or less. **42.2** Replacement of a defective valve should increase stroke volume. A lower heart rate would

therefore be sufficient to maintain the same cardiac output. **42.3** Blood pressure in the arm would fall by 25–30 mm Hg, the same difference as is normally seen between your heart and your brain. **42.4** One microliter of blood contains about 5 million erythrocytes and 5,000 leukocytes, so leukocytes make up only about 0.1% of the cells in the absence of infection. **42.5** Because CO<sub>2</sub> is such a small fraction of atmospheric gas (0.29 mm Hg/760 mm Hg, or less than 0.04%), the partial pressure gradient of CO<sub>2</sub> between the respiratory surface and the environment always strongly favors the release of CO<sub>2</sub> to the atmosphere. **42.6** Because the lungs do not empty completely with each breath, incoming and outgoing air mix, so the air in lungs represents a mixture of fresh and stale air. **42.7** An enzyme speeds up a reaction without changing the equilibrium and without being consumed. Similarly, a respiratory pigment speeds up the exchange of gases between the body and the external environment without changing the equilibrium and without being consumed.

#### Test Your Understanding

1. c 2. a 3. d 4. c 5. c 6. a 7. a  
8.



## Chapter 43

#### Figure Questions

**Figure 43.5** The seemingly inactive peptides might offer protection against pathogens other than those studied. Also, some antimicrobial peptides might work best in combination. **Figure 43.6** Cell-surface TLRs recognize molecules on the surface of pathogens, whereas TLRs in vesicles recognize internal molecules of pathogens after the pathogens are broken down. **Figure 43.10** Part of the enzyme or antigen receptor provides a structural "backbone" that maintains overall shape, while interaction occurs at a surface with a close fit to the substrate or antigen. The combined effect of multiple noncovalent interactions at the active site or binding site is a high-affinity interaction of tremendous specificity. **Figure 43.13** After gene rearrangement, a lymphocyte and its daughter cells make a single version of the antigen receptor. In contrast, alternative splicing is not heritable and can give rise to diverse gene products in a single cell. **Figure 43.18** These receptors enable memory cells to present antigen on their cell surface to a helper T cell. This presentation of antigen is required to activate memory cells in a secondary immune response. **Figure 43.20** Primary response: arrows extending from Antigen (1st exposure), Antigen-presenting cell, Helper T cell, B cell, Plasma cells, Cytotoxic T cell, and Active cytotoxic T cells; secondary response: arrows extending from Antigen (2nd exposure), Memory helper T cells, Memory B cells, Memory cytotoxic T cells, Plasma cells, and Active cytotoxic T cells.

#### Concept Check 43.1

**1.** Because pus contains white blood cells, fluid, and cell debris, it indicates an active and at least partially successful inflammatory response against invading pathogens. **2.** Whereas the ligand for the TLR receptor is a foreign molecule, the ligand for many signal transduction pathways is a molecule produced by the organism itself. **3.** Bacteria with a human host would likely grow optimally at normal human body temperature or, if fever were often induced, at a temperature a few degrees higher.

#### Concept Check 43.2

**1.** See Figure 43.9. The transmembrane regions lie within the C regions, which also form the disulfide bridges. In contrast, the antigen-binding sites are in the V regions. **2.** Generating memory cells ensures both that a receptor specific for a particular epitope will be present and that there will be more lymphocytes with this specificity than in a host that had never encountered the antigen. **3.** If each B cell produced two different light and heavy chains for its antigen receptor, different combinations would make four different receptors. If any one were self-reactive, the lymphocyte would be eliminated in the generation of self-tolerance. For this reason, many more B cells would be eliminated, and those that could respond to a foreign antigen would be less effective at doing so due to the variety of receptors (and antibodies) they express.

#### Concept Check 43.3

**1.** A child lacking a thymus would have no functional T cells. Without helper T cells to help activate B cells, the child would be unable to produce antibodies against extracellular bacteria. Furthermore, without cytotoxic T cells or helper T cells, the child's immune system would be unable to kill virus-infected cells.

**2.** Since the antigen-binding site is intact, the antibody fragments could neutralize viruses and opsonize bacteria. **3.** If the handler developed immunity to proteins in the antivenin, another injection could provoke a severe immune response. The handler's immune system might also now produce antibodies that could neutralize the venom.

#### Concept Check 43.4

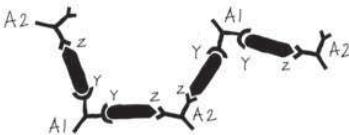
**1.** Myasthenia gravis is considered an autoimmune disease because the immune system produces antibodies against self molecules (certain receptors on muscle cells). **2.** A person with a cold is likely to produce oral and nasal secretions that facilitate viral transfer. In addition, since sickness can cause incapacitation or death, a virus that is programmed to exit the host when there is a physiological stress has the opportunity to find a new host at a time when the current host may cease to function. **3.** A person with a macrophage deficiency would have frequent infections. The causes would be poor innate responses, due to diminished phagocytosis and inflammation, and poor adaptive responses, due to the lack of macrophages to present antigens to helper T cells.

#### Summary of Key Concepts Questions

**43.1** Lysozyme in saliva destroys bacterial cell walls; the viscosity of mucus helps trap bacteria; acidic pH in the stomach kills many bacteria; and the tight packing of cells lining the gut provides a physical barrier to infection. **43.2** Sufficient numbers of cells to mediate an innate immune response are always present, whereas an adaptive response requires selection and proliferation of an initially very small cell population specific for the infecting pathogen. **43.3** No. Immunological memory after a natural infection and that after vaccination are very similar. There may be minor differences in the particular antigens that can be recognized in a subsequent infection. **43.4** No. AIDS refers to a loss of immune function that can occur over time in an individual infected with HIV. However, certain multidrug combinations ("cocktails") or rare genetic variations usually prevent progression to AIDS in HIV-infected individuals.

#### Test Your Understanding

1. b   2. c   3. c   4. b   5. b   6. b   7. c  
8. One possible answer:



## Chapter 44

#### Figure Questions

**Figure 44.13** You would expect to find these cells lining tubules where they pass through the renal medulla. Because the extracellular fluid of the renal medulla has a very high osmolarity, production of organic solutes by tubule cells in this region keeps intracellular osmolarity high, with the result that these cells maintain normal volume. **Figure 44.14** Furosemide increases urine volume. The absence of ion transport in the ascending limb leaves the filtrate too concentrated for substantial volume reduction in the distal tubule and collecting duct. **Figure 44.17** When the concentration of an ion differs across a plasma membrane, the difference in the concentration of ions inside and outside represents chemical potential energy, while the resulting difference in charge inside and outside represents electrical potential energy. **Figure 44.20** The ADH levels would likely be elevated in both sets of patients with mutations because either defect prevents the recapture of water that restores blood osmolarity to normal levels. **Figure 44.21** Each molecule of renin or ACE activates multiple molecules of the next protein in the pathway. The same is true for the protein kinases. The proteases differ from the protein kinases in at least two ways. First, whereas phosphatases can remove the phosphates added to proteins by kinases, cells lack enzymes that can rejoin polypeptides separated by proteases. Second, proteases of this type do not require activation by another enzyme molecule.

#### Concept Check 44.1

1. Because the salt is moved against its concentration gradient, from low concentration (fresh water) to high concentration (blood) **2.** A freshwater osmoconformer would have body fluids too dilute to carry out life's processes. **3.** Without a layer of insulating fur, the camel must use the cooling effect of

evaporative water loss to maintain body temperature, thus linking thermoregulation and osmoregulation.

#### Concept Check 44.2

**1.** Because uric acid is largely insoluble in water, it can be excreted as a semisolid paste, thereby reducing an animal's water loss. **2.** Humans produce uric acid from purine breakdown, and reducing purines in the diet often lessens the severity of gout. Birds, however, produce uric acid as a waste product of general nitrogen metabolism. They would therefore need a diet low in all nitrogen-containing compounds, not just purines.

#### Concept Check 44.3

**1.** In flatworms, ciliated cells draw interstitial fluids containing waste products into protonephridia. In earthworms, waste products pass from interstitial fluids into the coelom. From there, cilia move the wastes into metanephridia via a funnel surrounding an internal opening to the metanephridia. In insects, the Malpighian tubules pump fluids from the hemolymph, which receives waste products during exchange with cells in the course of circulation. **2.** Filtration produces a fluid for exchange processes that is free of cells and large molecules, which are of benefit to the animal and could not readily be reabsorbed. **3.** Filtrate is formed when the glomerulus filters blood from the renal artery within Bowman's capsule. Some of the filtrate contents are recovered, enter capillaries, and exit in the renal vein; the rest remain in the filtrate and pass out of the kidney in the ureter. **4.** The presence of  $\text{Na}^+$  and other ions (electrolytes) in the dialysate would limit the extent to which they would be removed from the filtrate during dialysis. Adjusting the electrolyte concentrations in the starting dialysate can thus lead to the restoration of proper electrolyte concentrations in the plasma. Similarly, the absence of urea and other waste products in the starting dialysate facilitates their removal from the filtrate.

#### Concept Check 44.4

**1.** The numerous nephrons and well-developed glomeruli of freshwater fishes produce urine at a high rate, while the small numbers of nephrons and smaller glomeruli of marine fishes produce urine at a low rate. **2.** The kidney medulla would absorb less water; thus, the drug would increase the amount of water lost in the urine. **3.** A decline in blood pressure in the afferent arteriole would reduce the rate of filtration by moving less material through the vessels.

#### Concept Check 44.5

**1.** Alcohol inhibits the release of ADH, causing an increase in urinary water loss and increasing the chance of dehydration. **2.** The consumption of a very large amount of water in a short period of time, coupled with an absence of solute intake, can reduce sodium levels in the blood below tolerable levels. This condition, called hyponatremia, leads to disorientation and, sometimes, respiratory distress. It has occurred in some marathon runners who drink water rather than sports drinks. (It has also caused the death of a fraternity pledge as a consequence of a water hazing ritual and the death of a contestant in a water-drinking competition.) **3.** High blood pressure

#### Summary of Key Concepts Questions

**44.1** Water moves into a cell by osmosis when the fluid outside the cells is hypoosmotic (has a lower solute concentration than the cytosol).

#### 44.2

| Waste Attribute         | Ammonia | Urea     | Uric Acid |
|-------------------------|---------|----------|-----------|
| Toxicity                | High    | Very low | Low       |
| Energy cost to produce  | Low     | Moderate | High      |
| Water loss to excretion | High    | Moderate | Low       |

**44.3** Filtration retains large molecules that would be difficult to transport across membranes. **44.4** Both types of nephrons have proximal tubules that can reabsorb nutrients, but only juxtaglomerular nephrons have loops of Henle that extend deep into the renal medulla. Thus, only kidneys containing juxtaglomerular nephrons can produce urine that is more concentrated than the blood. **44.5** Patients who don't produce ADH have symptoms relieved by treatment with the hormone, but many patients with diabetes insipidus lack functional receptors for ADH.

#### Test Your Understanding

1. c   2. a   3. c   4. d   5. c   6. b

## Chapter 45

### Figure Questions

**Figure 45.4**



**Figure 45.5** The hormone is water-soluble and has a cell-surface receptor. Such receptors, unlike those for lipid-soluble hormones, can cause observable changes in cells without hormone-dependent gene transcription.

### Concept Check 45.1

1. Water-soluble hormones, which cannot penetrate the plasma membrane, bind to cell-surface receptors. This interaction triggers an intracellular signal transduction pathway that ultimately alters the activity of a preexisting protein in the cytoplasm and/or changes transcription of specific genes in the nucleus. Steroid hormones are lipid-soluble and can cross the plasma membrane into the cell interior, where they bind to receptors located in the cytosol or nucleus. The hormone-receptor complex then functions directly as a transcription factor that changes transcription of specific genes. 2. Prostaglandins in semen that induce contractions in the uterus are acting as signaling molecules that are transferred from one individual to another of the same species (like pheromones), thus aiding in reproduction. 3. Both hormones produce opposite effects in different target tissues. In the fight-or-flight response, epinephrine increases blood flow to skeletal muscles and reduces blood flow to smooth muscles in the digestive system. In establishing apical dominance, auxin promotes the growth of apical buds and inhibits the growth of lateral buds.

### Concept Check 45.2

1. Prolactin regulates milk production, whereas oxytocin regulates milk release. 2. The posterior pituitary, an extension of the hypothalamus that contains the axons of neurosecretory cells, is the storage and release site for two neurohormones, oxytocin and antidiuretic hormone (ADH). The anterior pituitary contains endocrine cells that make at least six different hormones. Secretion of anterior pituitary hormones is controlled by hypothalamic hormones that travel via blood vessels to the anterior pituitary. 3. The hypothalamus and pituitary glands function in many different endocrine pathways. Many defects in these glands, such as those affecting growth or organization, would therefore disrupt many hormone pathways. Only a very specific defect, such as a mutation affecting a particular hormone receptor, would alter just one endocrine pathway. The situation is quite different for the final gland in a pathway, such as the thyroid gland. In this case, a wide range of defects that disrupt gland function would disrupt only the one pathway or small set of pathways in which that gland functions. 4. Both diagnoses could be correct. In one case, the thyroid gland may produce excess thyroid hormone despite normal hormonal input from the hypothalamus and anterior pituitary. In the other, abnormally elevated hormonal input (elevated TSH levels) may be the cause of the overactive thyroid gland.

### Concept Check 45.3

1. If the function of the pathway is to provide a transient response, a short-lived stimulus would be less dependent on negative feedback. 2. The levels of these hormones in the blood would become very high. This would be due to the diminished negative feedback on the hypothalamic neurons that secrete the releasing hormone that stimulates the secretion of ACTH by the anterior pituitary. 3. You would be exploiting the anti-inflammatory activity of glucocorticoids. Local injection avoids the effects on glucose metabolism that would occur if glucocorticoids were taken orally and transported throughout the body in the bloodstream.

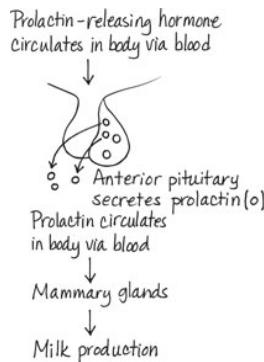
### Summary of Key Concepts Questions

**45.1** Because receptors for water-soluble hormones are located on the cell surface, facing the extracellular space, injecting the hormone into the cytosol would not trigger a response. **45.2** The pancreas, parathyroid glands, and pineal gland **45.3** Both the pituitary and the adrenal glands are formed by fusion of neural and nonneural tissue. ADH is secreted by the neurosecretory portion of the pituitary gland, and epinephrine is secreted by the neurosecretory portion of the adrenal gland.

### Test Your Understanding

1. c 2. d 3. d 4. b 5. b 6. b 7. a

**8.**



## Chapter 46

### Figure Questions

**Figure 46.8** When successfully courted by a second male, regardless of his genotype, about one-third of the females rid themselves of all sperm from the first mating. Thus, two-thirds retained some sperm from the first mating. We would therefore predict that two-thirds of those females would have some offspring exhibiting the small-eye phenotype of the dominant mutation carried by the males with which the females mated first. **Figure 46.11** The analysis would be informative because the polar bodies contain all of the maternal chromosomes that don't end up in the mature egg. For example, finding two copies of the disease gene in the polar bodies would indicate its absence in the egg. This method of genetic testing is sometimes carried out when oocytes collected from a female are fertilized with sperm in a laboratory dish. **Figure 46.16** Testosterone can pass from fetal blood to maternal blood via the placental circulation, temporarily upsetting the hormonal balance in the mother. **Figure 46.18** Oxytocin would most likely induce labor, starting a positive-feedback loop that would direct labor to completion. Synthetic oxytocin is in fact frequently used to induce labor when prolonged pregnancy might endanger the mother or fetus.

### Concept Check 46.1

- The offspring of sexual reproduction are more genetically diverse. However, asexual reproduction can produce more offspring over multiple generations.
- Unlike other forms of asexual reproduction, parthenogenesis involves gamete production. By controlling whether or not haploid eggs are fertilized, species such as honeybees can readily switch between asexual and sexual reproduction.
- No. Owing to random assortment of chromosomes during meiosis, the offspring may receive the same copy or different copies of a particular parental chromosome from the sperm and the egg. Furthermore, genetic recombination during meiosis will result in reassortment of genes between pairs of parental chromosomes.
- Both fragmentation and budding in animals have direct counterparts in the asexual reproduction of plants.

### Concept Check 46.2

- Internal fertilization allows sperm to reach the egg without either gamete drying out.
- (a) Animals with external fertilization tend to release many gametes at once, resulting in the production of enormous numbers of zygotes. This increases the chances that some will survive to adulthood. (b) Animals with internal fertilization produce fewer offspring but generally exhibit greater care of the embryos and the young.
- Like the uterus of an insect, the ovary of a plant is the site of fertilization. Unlike the plant ovary, the uterus is not the site of egg production, which occurs in the insect ovary. In addition, the fertilized insect egg is expelled from the uterus, whereas the plant embryo develops within a seed in the ovary.

### Concept Check 46.3

- Spermatogenesis occurs normally only when the testicles are cooler than normal body temperature. Extensive use of a hot tub (or of very tight-fitting underwear) can cause a decrease in sperm quality and number.
- In humans, the secondary oocyte combines with a sperm before it finishes the second meiotic division. Thus, oogenesis is completed after, not before, fertilization.
- The only effect of sealing off each vas deferens is an absence of sperm in the ejaculate. Sexual response and ejaculate volume are unchanged. The cutting and sealing off of these ducts, a *vasectomy*, is a common surgical procedure for men who do not wish to produce any (more) offspring.

### Concept Check 46.4

- In the testis, FSH stimulates the Sertoli cells, which nourish developing sperm. LH stimulates the production of androgens (mainly testosterone), which in turn stimulate sperm production. In both females and males, FSH encourages the growth of cells that support and nourish developing gametes (follicle cells in females and Sertoli cells in males), and LH stimulates the production of sex hormones that promote gametogenesis (estrogens, primarily estradiol, in females and androgens, especially testosterone, in males).
- In estrous cycles, which occur in most female mammals, the endometrium is reabsorbed (rather than shed) if fertilization does not occur. Estrous cycles often occur just once or a few times a year, and the female is usually receptive to copulation only during the period around ovulation. Menstrual cycles are found only in humans and some other primates.
- The combination of estradiol and progesterone would have

a negative-feedback effect on the hypothalamus, blocking release of GnRH. This would interfere with LH secretion by the pituitary, thus preventing ovulation. This is in fact one basis of action of the most common hormonal contraceptives. **4.** In the viral replicative cycle, the production of new viral genomes is coordinated with capsid protein expression and with the production of phospholipids for viral coats. In the reproductive cycle of a human female, there is hormonally based coordination of egg maturation with the development of support tissues of the uterus.

#### Concept Check 46.5

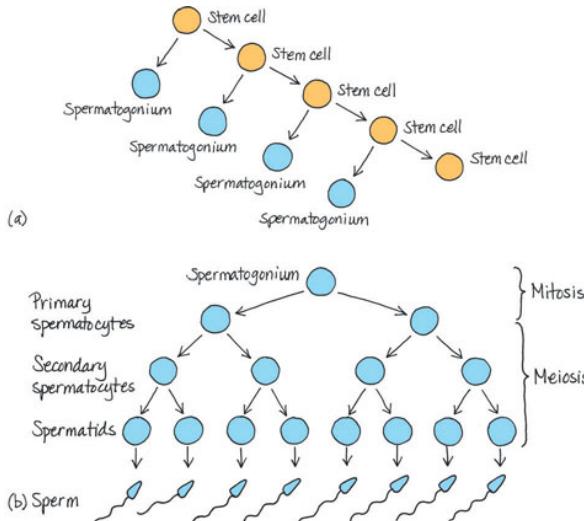
**1.** The secretion of hCG by the early embryo stimulates the corpus luteum to make progesterone, which helps maintain the pregnancy. During the second trimester, however, hCG production drops, the corpus luteum disintegrates, and the placenta completely takes over progesterone production. **2.** Both tubal ligation and vasectomy block the movement of gametes from the gonads to a site where fertilization could take place. **3.** The introduction of a sperm nucleus directly into an oocyte bypasses the sperm's acquisition of motility in the epididymis, its swimming to meet the egg in the oviduct, and its fusion with the egg.

#### Summary of Key Concepts Questions

**46.1** No. Because parthenogenesis involves meiosis, the mother would pass on to each offspring a random and therefore typically distinct combination of the chromosomes she inherited from her mother and father. **46.2** None **46.3** The small size and lack of cytoplasm characteristic of a sperm are adaptations well suited to its function as a delivery vehicle for DNA. The large size and rich cytoplasmic contents of eggs support the growth and development of the embryo. **46.4** Circulating anabolic steroids mimic the feedback regulation of testosterone, turning off pituitary signaling to the testes and thereby blocking the release of signals required for spermatogenesis. **46.5** Oxygen in maternal blood diffuses from pools in the endometrium into fetal capillaries in the chorionic villi of the placenta, and from there travels throughout the circulatory system of the fetus.

#### Test Your Understanding

1. d 2. b 3. a 4. c 5. a 6. b 7. c 8. d  
9.



(c) The supply of stem cells would be used up, and spermatogenesis would not be able to continue.

## Chapter 47

#### Figure Questions

**Figure 47.4** You could inject the compound into an unfertilized egg, expose the egg to sperm, and see whether the fertilization envelope forms. **Figure 47.22** When the researchers allowed normal cortical rotation to occur, the "back-forming" determinants were activated. When they then forced the opposite rotation to occur, the back was established on the opposite side as well. Because the molecules on the normal side were already activated, forcing the opposite rotation apparently did not "cancel out" the establishment of the back side by the first rotation. **Figure 47.23** In Spemann's control, the two blastomeres were physically separated, and each grew into a whole embryo. In Roux's experiment, remnants of the dead blastomere were still contacting the live blastomere, which developed into a half-embryo. Therefore, molecules present in the dead cell's remnants may have been signaling to the live cell, inhibiting it from making all the embryonic structures. **Figure 47.24** You could inject the isolated protein (or an mRNA encoding it) into ventral cells of an earlier gastrula. If dorsal structures form on the ventral side, that would support the idea that the protein is the signaling molecule secreted or presented by the dorsal lip. You should also do a control experiment to make sure the injection process alone did not cause dorsal structures to form. **Figure 47.26** Either Sonic hedgehog mRNA or protein can serve as a marker of the ZPA. If either was absent after removal of the AER, that would support your hypothesis. You could also block FGF function and see whether the ZPA formed (by looking for Sonic hedgehog).

#### Concept Check 47.1

**1.** The fertilization envelope forms after cortical granules release their contents outside the egg, causing the vitelline membrane to rise and harden. The fertilization envelope serves as a barrier to fertilization by more than one sperm. **2.** The increased  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration in the egg would cause the cortical granules to fuse with the plasma membrane, releasing their contents and causing a fertilization envelope to form, even though no sperm had entered. This would prevent fertilization. **3.** You would expect it to fluctuate. The fluctuation of MPF drives the transition between DNA replication (S phase) and mitosis (M phase), which is still required in the abbreviated cleavage cell cycle.

#### Concept Check 47.2

**1.** The cells of the notochord migrate toward the midline of the embryo (converge), rearranging themselves so there are fewer cells across the notochord, which thus becomes longer overall (extends; see Figure 47.17). **2.** Because microfilaments would not be able to contract and decrease the size of one end of the cell, both the inward bending in the middle of the neural tube and the outward bending of the hinge regions at the edges would be blocked. Therefore, the neural tube probably would not form. **3.** Dietary intake of the vitamin folic acid dramatically reduces the frequency of neural tube defects.

#### Concept Check 47.3

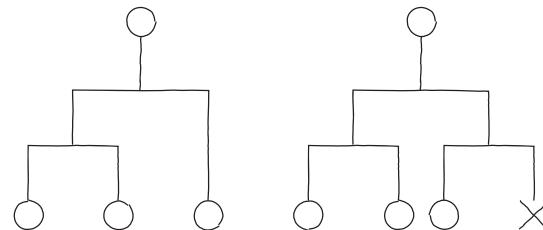
**1.** Axis formation establishes the location and polarity of the three axes that provide the coordinates for development. Pattern formation positions particular tissues and organs in the three-dimensional space defined by those coordinates. **2.** Morphogen gradients act by specifying cell fates across a field of cells through variation in the level of a determinant. Morphogen gradients thus act more globally than cytoplasmic determinants or inductive interactions between pairs of cells. **3.** Yes, a second embryo could develop because inhibiting BMP-4 activity would have the same effect as transplanting an organizer. **4.** The limb that developed probably would have a mirror-image duplication, with the most posterior digits in the middle and the most anterior digits at either end.

#### Summary of Key Concepts Questions

**47.1** The binding of a sperm to a receptor on the egg surface is very specific and likely would not occur if the two gametes were from different species. Without sperm binding, the sperm and egg membranes would not fuse. **47.2** The neural tube forms when the neural plate, a band of ectodermal tissue oriented along the anterior-posterior axis on the dorsal side of the embryo, rolls into a tube and pinches off from the rest of the ectoderm. Neural crest cells arise as groups of cells in the regions between the edges of the neural tube and the surrounding ectoderm migrate away from the neural tube. **47.3** Mutations that affected both limb and kidney development would be more likely to alter the function of monocilia because these organelles are important in several signaling pathways. Mutations that affected limb development but not kidney development would more likely alter a single pathway, such as Hedgehog signaling.

#### Test Your Understanding

1. a 2. b 3. d 4. a 5. d 6. c 7. b  
8.

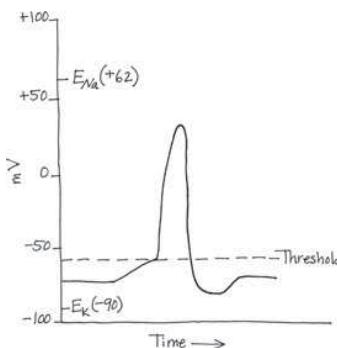


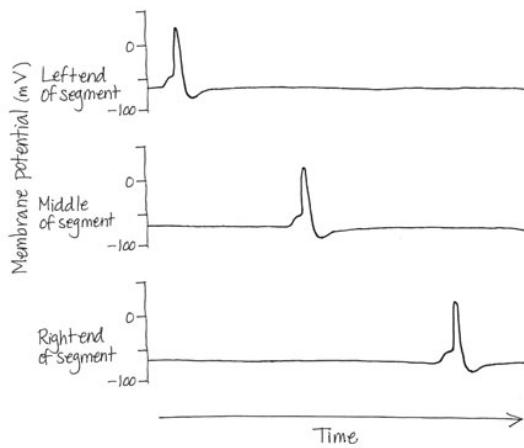
## Chapter 48

#### Figure Questions

**Figure 48.7** Adding chloride channels would make the membrane potential less positive. Adding sodium or potassium channels would have no effect, because sodium ions are already at equilibrium and there are no potassium ions present.

#### Figure 48.10



**Figure 48.12**

**Figure 48.16** The production and transmission of action potentials would be unaffected. However, action potentials arriving at chemical synapses would be unable to trigger release of neurotransmitter. Signaling at such synapses would thus be blocked.

#### Concept Check 48.1

1. Axons and dendrites extend from the cell body and function in information flow. Dendrites transfer information to the cell body, whereas axons transmit information from the cell body. A typical neuron has multiple dendrites and one axon.
2. Sensors in your ear transmit information to your brain. There the activity of interneurons in processing centers enables you to recognize your name. In response, signals transmitted via motor neurons cause contraction of muscles that turn your neck.
3. Increased branching would allow control of a greater number of postsynaptic cells, enhancing coordination of responses to nervous system signals.

#### Concept Check 48.2

1. Ions can flow against a chemical concentration gradient if there is an opposing electrical gradient of greater magnitude.
2. A decrease in permeability to  $K^+$ , an increase in permeability to  $Na^+$ , or both.
3. Charged dye molecules could equilibrate only if other charged molecules could also cross the membrane. If not, a membrane potential would develop that would counterbalance the chemical gradient.

#### Concept Check 48.3

1. A graded potential has a magnitude that varies with stimulus strength, whereas an action potential has an all-or-none magnitude that is independent of stimulus strength.
2. Loss of the insulation provided by myelin sheaths leads to a disruption of action potential propagation along axons. Voltage-gated sodium channels are restricted to the nodes of Ranvier, and without the insulating effect of myelin, the inward current produced at one node during an action potential cannot depolarize the membrane to the threshold at the next node.
3. Positive feedback is responsible for the rapid opening of many voltage-gated sodium channels, causing the rapid outflow of sodium ions responsible for the rising phase of the action potential. As the membrane potential becomes positive, voltage-gated potassium channels open in a form of negative feedback that helps bring about the falling phase of the action potential.
4. The maximum frequency would decrease because the refractory period would be extended.

#### Concept Check 48.4

1. It can bind to different types of receptors, each triggering a specific response in postsynaptic cells.
2. These toxins would prolong the EPSPs that acetylcholine produces because the neurotransmitter would remain longer in the synaptic cleft.
3. Membrane depolarization, exocytosis, and membrane fusion each occur in fertilization and in neurotransmission.

#### Summary of Key Concepts Questions

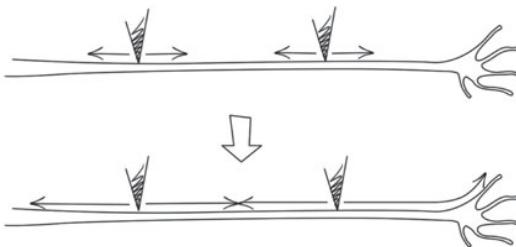
- 48.1** It would prevent information from being transmitted away from the cell body along the axon.
- 48.2** There are very few open sodium channels in a resting neuron, so the resting potential either would not change or would become slightly more negative (hyperpolarization).
- 48.4** A given neurotransmitter can have many receptors that differ in their location and activity. Drugs that target receptor activity rather than neurotransmitter release or stability are therefore likely to exhibit greater specificity and potentially have fewer undesirable side effects.

#### Test Your Understanding

1. c 2. c 3. c 4. b 5. a 6. d
7. The activity of the sodium-potassium pump is essential to maintain the resting potential. With the pump inactivated, the sodium and potassium concentration gradients would gradually disappear, resulting in a greatly reduced resting potential.
8. Since GABA is an inhibitory neurotransmitter in the CNS, this drug would be expected to decrease brain activity. A decrease in brain activity might be expected to slow down or reduce behavioral activity. Many sedative drugs act

in this fashion.

**9.** As shown in this pair of drawings, a pair of action potentials would move outward in both directions from each electrode. (Action potentials are unidirectional only if they begin at one end of an axon.) However, because of the refractory period, the two action potentials between the electrodes both stop where they meet. Thus, only one action potential reaches the synaptic terminals.



## Chapter 49

#### Figure Questions

**Figure 49.7** During swallowing, muscles along the esophagus alternately contract and relax, resulting in peristalsis. One model to explain this alternation is that each section of muscle receives nerve impulses that alternate between excitation and inhibition, just as the quadriceps and hamstring receive opposing signals in the knee-jerk reflex.

**Figure 49.15** Regions you would expect to be active regardless of the type of music played would include ones that are important for processing and interpreting sounds.

**Figure 49.23** If the depolarization brings the membrane potential to or past threshold, it should initiate action potentials that cause dopamine release from the VTA neurons. This should mimic natural stimulation of the brain reward system, resulting in positive and perhaps pleasurable sensations.

#### Concept Check 49.1

1. The sympathetic division would likely be activated. It mediates the “fight-or-flight” response in stressful situations.
2. Nerves contain bundles of axons, some that belong to motor neurons, which send signals outward from the CNS, and some that belong to sensory neurons, which bring signals into the CNS. Therefore, you would expect effects on both motor control and sensation.
3. Neurosecretory cells of the adrenal medulla secrete the hormones epinephrine and norepinephrine in response to preganglionic input from sympathetic neurons. These hormones travel in the circulation throughout the body, triggering responses in many tissues.

#### Concept Check 49.2

1. The cerebral cortex on the left side of the brain initiates voluntary movement of the right side of the body.
2. Alcohol diminishes function of the cerebellum.
3. A coma reflects a disruption in the cycles of sleep and arousal regulated by communication between the midbrain and pons (reticular formation) and the cerebrum. You would expect this group to have damage to the midbrain, the pons, the cerebrum, or any part of the brain between these structures. Paralysis reflects an inability to carry out motor commands transmitted from the cerebrum to the spinal cord. You would expect this group to have damage to the portion of the CNS extending from the spinal cord up to but not including the midbrain and pons.

#### Concept Check 49.3

1. Brain damage that disrupts behavior, cognition, memory, or other functions provides evidence that the portion of the brain affected by the damage is important for the normal activity that is blocked or altered.
2. Broca's area, which is active during the generation of speech, is located near the motor cortex, which controls skeletal muscles, including those in the face. Wernicke's area, which is active when speech is heard, is located in the posterior part of the temporal lobe, which is involved in hearing.
3. Each cerebral hemisphere is specialized for different parts of this task—the right for face recognition and the left for language. Without an intact corpus callosum, neither hemisphere can take advantage of the other's processing abilities.

#### Concept Check 49.4

1. There can be an increase in the number of synapses between the neurons or an increase in the strength of existing synaptic connections.
2. If consciousness is an emergent property resulting from the interaction of many different regions of the brain, then it is unlikely that localized brain damage will have a discrete effect on consciousness.
3. The hippocampus is responsible for organizing newly acquired information. Without hippocampal function, the links necessary to retrieve information from the cerebral cortex will be lacking, and no functional memory, short- or long-term, will be formed.

#### Concept Check 49.5

1. Both are progressive brain diseases whose risk increases with advancing age. Both result from the death of brain neurons and are associated with the accumulation of peptide or protein aggregates.
2. The symptoms of schizophrenia can be mimicked by a drug that stimulates dopamine-releasing neurons. The brain's reward system, which is involved in drug addiction, is composed of dopamine-releasing neurons that connect the ventral tegmental area to regions in the cerebrum. Parkinson's disease results from the death of dopamine-releasing

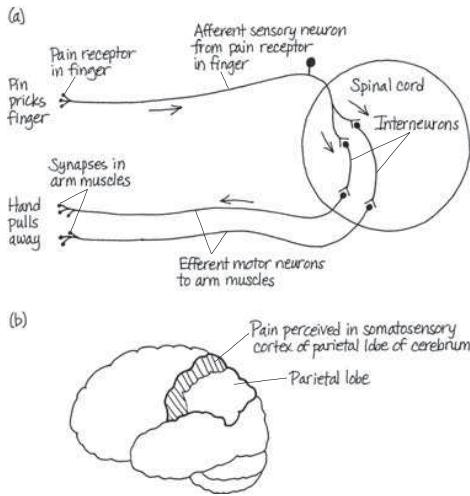
neurons. **3.** Not necessarily. It might be that the plaques, tangles, and missing regions of the brain seen at death reflect secondary effects, the consequence of other unseen changes that are actually responsible for the alterations in brain function.

#### Summary of Key Concepts Questions

**49.1** Because reflex circuits involve only a few neurons—the simplest consist of a sensory neuron and a motor neuron—the path for information transfer is short and simple, increasing the speed of the response. **49.2** The midbrain coordinates visual reflexes; the cerebellum controls coordination of movement that depends on visual input; the thalamus serves as a routing center for visual information; and the cerebrum is essential for converting visual input to a visual image. **49.3** You would expect the right side of the body to be paralyzed because it is controlled by the left cerebral hemisphere, where language generation and interpretation are localized. **49.4** Learning a new language likely requires the maintenance of synapses that are formed during early development but are otherwise lost prior to adulthood. **49.5** Whereas amphetamine stimulates dopamine release, PCP blocks glutamate receptors, suggesting that schizophrenia does not reflect a defect in the function of just one neurotransmitter.

#### Test Your Understanding

1. b 2. a 3. d 4. c 5. c 6. a  
7.



## Chapter 50

#### Figure Questions

**Figure 50.19** Each of the three types of cones is most sensitive to a different wavelength of light. A cone might be fully depolarized when there is light present if the light is of a wavelength far from its optimum. **Figure 50.21** In humans, an X chromosome with a defect in the red or green opsin gene is much less common than a wild-type X chromosome. Color blindness therefore typically skips a generation as the defective allele passes from an affected male to a carrier daughter and back to an affected grandson. In squirrel monkeys, no X chromosome can confer full color vision. As a result, all males are color-blind and no unusual inheritance pattern is observed. **Figure 50.23** The results of the experiment would have been identical. What matters is the activation of particular sets of neurons, not the manner in which they are activated. Any signal from a bitter cell will be interpreted by the brain as a bitter taste, regardless of the nature of the compound and the receptor involved. **Figure 50.25** Only perception. Binding of an odorant to its receptor will cause action potentials to be sent to the brain. Although an excess of that odorant might cause a diminished response through adaptation, another odorant can mask the first only at the level of perception in the brain. **Figure 50.28** Hundreds of myosin heads participate in sliding each pair of thick and thin filaments past each other. Because cross-bridge formation and breakdown are not synchronized, many myosin heads are exerting force on the thin filaments at all times during muscle contraction. **Figure 50.32** By causing all of the motor neurons that control the muscle to generate action potentials at a rate high enough to produce tetanus in all of the muscle fibers.

#### Concept Check 50.1

1. Electromagnetic receptors in general detect only external stimuli. Nonelectromagnetic receptors, such as chemoreceptors or mechanoreceptors, can act as either internal or external sensors. 2. The capsaicin present in the peppers activates the thermoreceptor for high temperatures. In response to the perceived high temperature, the nervous system triggers sweating to achieve evaporative cooling. 3. You would perceive the electrical stimulus as if the sensory receptors that regulate that neuron had been activated. For example, electrical stimulation of the sensory neuron controlled by the thermoreceptor activated by menthol would likely be perceived as a local cooling.

#### Concept Check 50.2

1. Otoliths detect the animal's orientation with respect to gravity, providing information that is essential in environments such as the tunnel habitat of the star-nosed mole, where light cues are absent. 2. As a sound that changes gradually from a very low to a very high pitch 3. The stapes and the other middle ear bones transmit vibrations from the tympanic membrane to the oval window. Fusion of these bones (as occurs in a disease called otosclerosis) would block this transmission and result in hearing loss. 4. In animals, the statoliths are extracellular. In contrast, the statoliths of plants are found within an intracellular organelle. The methods for detecting their location also differ. In animals, detection is by means of mechanoreceptors on ciliated cells. In plants, the mechanism appears to involve calcium signaling.

#### Concept Check 50.3

1. Planarians have ocelli that cannot form images but can sense the intensity and direction of light, providing enough information to enable the animals to find protection in shaded places. Flies have compound eyes that form images and excel at detecting movement. 2. The person can focus on distant objects but not close objects (without glasses) because close focusing requires the lens to become almost spherical. This problem is common after age 50. 3. The signal produced by rod and cone cells is glutamate, and their release of glutamate decreases upon exposure to light. However, a decrease in glutamate production causes other retinal cells to increase the rate at which action potentials are sent to the brain, so that the brain receives more action potentials in light than in dark. 4. Absorption of light by retinal converts retinal from its *cis* isomer to its *trans* isomer, initiating the process of light detection. In contrast, a photon absorbed by chlorophyll does not bring about isomerization, but instead boosts an electron to a higher energy orbital, initiating the electron flow that generates ATP and NADPH.

#### Concept Check 50.4

1. Both taste cells and olfactory cells have receptor proteins in their plasma membrane that bind certain substances, leading to membrane depolarization through a signal transduction pathway involving a G protein. However, olfactory cells are sensory neurons, whereas taste cells are not. 2. Since animals rely on chemical signals for behaviors that include finding mates, marking territories, and avoiding dangerous substances, it is adaptive for the olfactory system to have a robust response to a very small number of molecules of a particular odorant. 3. Because the sweet, bitter, and umami tastes involve GPCR proteins but the sour taste does not, you might predict that the mutation is in a molecule that acts in the signal transduction pathway common to the different GPCRs.

#### Concept Check 50.5

1. In a skeletal muscle fiber,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  binds to the troponin complex, which moves tropomyosin away from the myosin-binding sites on actin and allows cross-bridges to form. In a smooth muscle cell,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  binds to calmodulin, which activates an enzyme that phosphorylates the myosin head and thus enables cross-bridge formation. 2. *Rigor mortis*, a Latin phrase meaning "stiffness of death," results from the complete depletion of ATP in skeletal muscle. Since ATP is required to release myosin from actin and to pump  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  out of the cytosol, muscles become chronically contracted beginning about 3–4 hours after death. 3. A competitive inhibitor binds to the same site as the substrate for the enzyme. In contrast, the troponin and tropomyosin complex masks, but does not bind to, the myosin-binding sites on actin.

#### Concept Check 50.6

1. Septa provide the divisions of the coelom that allow for peristalsis, a form of locomotion requiring independent control of different body segments. 2. The main problem in swimming is drag; a fusiform body minimizes drag. The main problem in flying is overcoming gravity; wings shaped like airfoils provide lift, and adaptations such as air-filled bones reduce body mass. 3. When you grasp the sides of the chair, you are using a contraction of the triceps to keep your arms extended against the pull of gravity on your body. As you lower yourself slowly into the chair, you gradually decrease the number of motor units in the triceps that are contracted. Contracting your biceps would jerk you down, since you would no longer be opposing gravity.

#### Summary of Key Concepts Questions

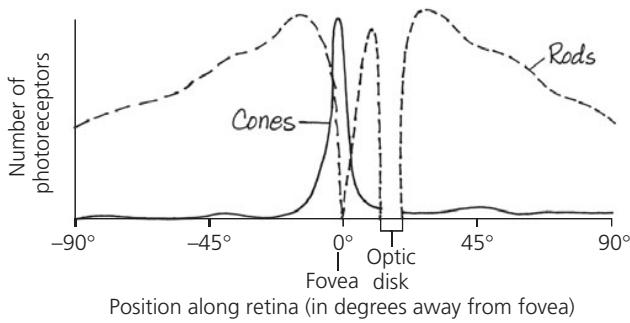
**50.1** Nociceptors overlap with other classes of receptors in the type of stimulus they detect. They differ from other receptors only in how a particular stimulus is perceived. **50.2** Volume is encoded by the frequency of action potentials transmitted to the brain; pitch is encoded by which axons are transmitting action potentials. **50.3** The major difference is that neurons in the retina integrate information from multiple sensory receptors (photoreceptors) before transmitting information to the central nervous system. **50.4** Our olfactory sense is responsible for most of what we describe as distinct tastes. A head cold or other source of congestion blocks odorant access to receptors lining portions of the nasal cavity. **50.5** Hydrolysis of ATP is required to convert myosin to a high-energy configuration for binding to actin and to power the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  pump that removes cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  during muscle relaxation. **50.6** Human body movements rely on the contraction of muscles anchored to a rigid endoskeleton. Tendons attach muscles to bones, which in turn are composed of fibers built up from a basic organizational unit, the sarcomere. The thin and thick filaments have separate points of attachment within the sarcomere. In response to nervous system motor output, the formation and breakdown of cross-bridges between myosin heads and actin ratchet the thin and thick filaments past each other. Because the filaments are anchored, this sliding

movement shortens the muscle fibers. Furthermore, because the fibers themselves are part of the muscles attached at each end to bones, muscle contraction moves bones of the body relative to each other. In this way, the structural anchoring of muscles and filaments enables muscle function, such as the bending of an elbow by contraction of the biceps.

#### Test Your Understanding

1. d 2. a 3. b 4. c 5. b 6. d

7.



The answer shows the actual distribution of rods and cones in the human eye. Your graph may differ, but should have the following properties: Only cones at the fovea; fewer cones and more rods at both ends of the x-axis; no photoreceptors in the optic disk.

## Chapter 51

#### Figure Questions

**Figure 51.2** The fixed action pattern based on the sign stimulus of a red belly ensures that the male will chase away any invading males of his species. By chasing away such males, the defender decreases the chance that another male will fertilize eggs laid in his nesting territory. **Figure 51.7** There should be no effect. Imprinting is an innate behavior that is carried out anew in each generation. Assuming the nest was not disturbed, the offspring of the Lorenz followers would imprint on the mother goose. **Figure 51.8** Perhaps the wasp doesn't use visual cues. It might also be that wasps recognize objects native to their environment, but not foreign objects, such as the pinecones. Tinbergen addressed these ideas before carrying out the pinecone study. When he swept away the pebbles and sticks around the nest, the wasps could no longer find their nests. If he shifted the natural objects in their natural arrangement, the shift in the landmarks caused a shift in the site to which the wasps returned. Finally, if natural objects around the nest site were replaced with pinecones while the wasp was in the burrow, the wasp nevertheless found her way back to the nest site. **Figure 51.24** It might be that the birds require stimuli during flight to exhibit their migratory preference. If this were true, the birds would show the same orientation in the funnel experiment despite their distinct genetic programming. **Figure 51.26** It holds true for some, but not all individuals. If a parent has more than one reproductive partner, the offspring of different partners will have a coefficient of relatedness less than 0.5.

#### Concept Check 51.1

1. The proximate explanation for this fixed action pattern might be that nudging and rolling are released by the sign stimulus of an object outside the nest, and the behavior is carried to completion once initiated. The ultimate explanation might be that ensuring that eggs remain in the nest increases the chance of producing healthy offspring. 2. There might be selective pressure for other prey fish to detect an injured fish because the source of the injury might threaten them as well. Among predators, there might be selection for those that are attracted to the alarm substance because they would be more likely to encounter crippled prey. Fish with adequate defenses might show no change because they have a selective advantage if they do not waste energy responding to the alarm substance. 3. In both cases, the detection of periodic variation in the environment results in a reproductive cycle timed to environmental conditions that optimize the opportunity for success.

#### Concept Check 51.2

1. Natural selection would tend to favor convergence in color pattern because a predator learning to associate a pattern with a sting or bad taste would avoid all other individuals with that same color pattern, regardless of species. 2. You might move objects around to establish an abstract rule, such as "past landmark A, the same distance as A is from the starting point," while maintaining a minimum of fixed metric relationships, that is, avoiding having the food directly adjacent to or a set distance from a landmark. As you might surmise, designing an informative experiment of this kind is not easy. 3. Learned behavior, just like innate behavior, can contribute to reproductive isolation and thus to speciation. For example, learned bird songs contribute to species recognition during courtship, thereby helping ensure that only members of the same species mate.

#### Concept Check 51.3

1. Certainty of paternity is higher with external fertilization. 2. Balancing selection could maintain the two alleles at the *forager* locus if population density fluctuated from one generation to another. At times of low population density, the energy-conserving sitter larvae (carrying the *for<sup>s</sup>* allele) would be favored, while at

higher population density, the more mobile Rover larvae (*for<sup>R</sup>* allele) would have a selective advantage. 3. Because females would now be present in much larger numbers than males, all three types of males should have some reproductive success. Nevertheless, since the advantage that the blue-throats rely on—a limited number of females in their territory—will be absent, the yellow-throats are likely to increase in frequency in the short term.

#### Concept Check 51.4

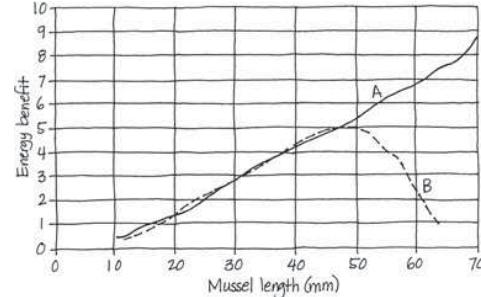
1. Because this geographic variation corresponds to differences in prey availability between two garter snake habitats, it seems likely that snakes with characteristics enabling them to feed on the abundant prey in their locale would have had increased survival and reproductive success. In this way, natural selection would have resulted in the divergent foraging behaviors. 2. The fact that the individual shares some genes with the offspring of its sibling (in the case of humans, with the individual's niece or nephew) means that the reproductive success of that niece or nephew increases the representation of those genes in the population (selects for them). 3. The older individual cannot be the beneficiary because he or she cannot have extra offspring. However, the cost is low for an older individual performing the altruistic act because that individual has already reproduced (but perhaps is still caring for a child or grandchild). There can therefore be selection for an altruistic act by a postreproductive individual that benefits a young relative.

#### Summary of Key Concepts Questions

**51.1** Circannual rhythms are typically based on the cycles of light and dark in the environment. As the global climate changes, animals that migrate in response to these rhythms may shift to a location before or after local environmental conditions are optimal for reproduction and survival. **51.2** For the goose, all that is acquired is an object at which the behavior is directed. In the case of the sparrow, learning takes place that will give shape to the behavior itself. **51.3** Because feeding the female is likely to improve her reproductive success, the genes from the sacrificed male are likely to appear in a greater number of progeny. **51.4** Studying the genetic basis of these behaviors reveals that changes in a single gene can have large-scale effects on even complex behaviors.

#### Test Your Understanding

1. c 2. b 3. b 4. a 5. c 6. a  
7.



You could measure the size of mussels that oystercatchers successfully open and compare that with the size distribution in the habitat.

## Chapter 52

#### Figure Questions

**Figure 52.7** Dispersal limitations, the activities of people (such as a broad-scale conversion of forests to agriculture or selective harvesting), or many other factors, including those discussed later in the chapter (see Figure 52.16) **Figure 52.16** Some factors, such as fire, are relevant only for terrestrial systems. At first glance, water availability is primarily a terrestrial factor, too. However, species living along the intertidal zone of oceans or along the edge of lakes also suffer desiccation. Salinity stress is important for species in some aquatic and terrestrial systems. Oxygen availability is an important factor primarily for species in some aquatic systems and in soils and sediments.

#### Concept Check 52.1

1. In the tropics, high temperatures evaporate water and cause warm, moist air to rise. The rising air cools and releases much of its water as rain over the tropics. The remaining dry air descends at approximately 30° north and south, causing deserts to occur in those regions. 2. The microclimate around the stream will be cooler, moister, and shadier than that around the unplanted agricultural field. 3. Trees that require a long time to reach reproductive age are likely to evolve more slowly than annual plants in response to climate change, constraining the potential ability of such trees to respond to rapid climate change. 4. Plants with C<sub>4</sub> photosynthesis are likely to expand their range globally as Earth's climate warms. C<sub>4</sub> photosynthesis minimizes photorespiration and enhances sugar production, an advantage that is especially useful in warmer regions where C<sub>4</sub> plants are found today.

#### Concept Check 52.2

2. Answers will vary by location but should be based on the information and maps in Figure 52.11. How much your local area has been altered from its natural state will influence how much it reflects the expected characteristics of your biome, particularly the expected plants and animals. 3. Northern coniferous forest is likely to replace tundra along the boundary between these biomes. To see why, note that northern coniferous forest is adjacent to tundra throughout North America,

northern Europe, and Asia (see Figure 52.8) and that the temperature range for northern coniferous forest is just above that for tundra (see Figure 52.9).

#### Concept Check 52.3

- In the oceanic pelagic zone, the ocean bottom lies below the photic zone, so there is too little light to support benthic algae or rooted plants.
- Aquatic organisms either gain or lose water by osmosis if the osmolarity of their environment differs from their internal osmolarity. Water gain can cause cells to swell, and water loss can cause them to shrink. To avoid excessive changes in cell volume, organisms that live in estuaries must be able to compensate for both water gain (under freshwater conditions) and water loss (under saltwater conditions).
- In a river below a dam, the fish are more likely to be species that prefer colder water. In summer, the deep layers of a reservoir are colder than the surface layers, so a river below a dam will be colder than an undammed river.

#### Concept Check 52.4

- (a) Humans might transplant a species to a new area that it could not previously reach because of a geographic barrier. (b) Humans might eliminate a predator or herbivore species, such as sea urchins, from an area.
- One test would be to build a fence around a plot of land in an area that has trees of that species, excluding all deer from the plot. You could then compare the abundance of tree seedlings inside and outside the fenced plot over time.
- Because the ancestor of the silverswords reached isolated Hawaii early in the islands' existence, it likely faced little competition and was able to occupy many unfilled niches. The cattle egret, in contrast, arrived in the Americas only recently and has to compete with a well-established group of species. Thus, its opportunities for adaptive radiation have probably been much more limited.

#### Summary of Key Concepts Questions

- 52.1** Because dry air would descend at the equator instead of at 30° north and south latitude (where deserts exist today), deserts would be more likely to exist along the equator (see Figure 52.3). **52.2** The dominant plants in savanna ecosystems tend to be adapted to fire and tolerant of seasonal droughts. The savanna biome is maintained by periodic fires, both natural and set by humans, but humans are also clearing savannas for agriculture and other uses. **52.3** An aphotic zone is most likely to be found in the deep waters of a lake, the oceanic pelagic zone, or the marine benthic zone. **52.4** You might arrange a flowchart that begins with abiotic limitations—first determining the physical and chemical conditions under which a species could survive—and then moves through the other factors listed in the flowchart.

#### Test Your Understanding

1. b   2. b   3. c   4. c   5. d   6. c   7. a   8. a   9. b

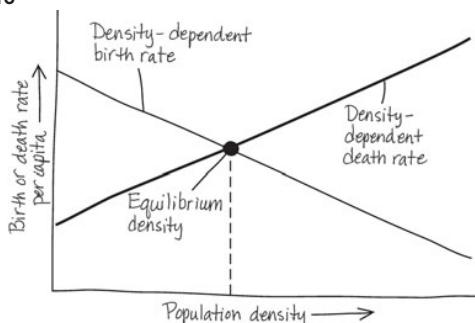
## Chapter 53

#### Figure Questions

**Figure 53.4** The dispersion of the penguins would likely appear clumped as you flew over densely populated islands and sparsely populated ocean.

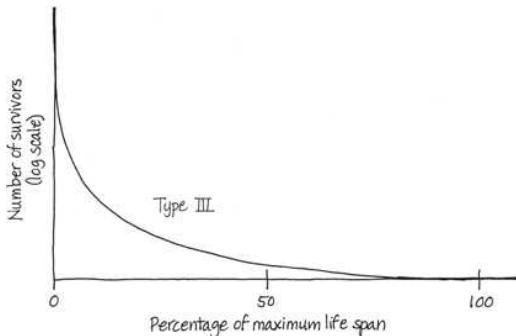
Figure 53.7 #109

Figure 53.16



Concept Check 53.1

- 1.



A Type III survivorship curve is most likely because very few of the young probably survive. **2.** If an animal is captured by attracting it with food, it may be more likely to be recaptured if it seeks the same food. The number of marked animals captured ( $x$ ) would be an overestimate, and because the population size ( $N$ ) is equal to  $sn/x$ ,  $N$  would be an underestimate. Alternatively, if an animal has a negative experience during capture and learns from that experience, it may be less likely to be recaptured. In this case,  $x$  would be an underestimate and  $N$  would be an overestimate. **3.** Male sticklebacks would likely have a uniform pattern of dispersion, with antagonistic interactions maintaining a relatively constant spacing between them.

#### Concept Check 53.2

- Though  $r_{inst}$  is constant,  $N$ , the population size, is increasing. As  $r_{inst}$  is applied to an increasingly large  $N$ , population growth ( $r_{inst}N$ ) accelerates, producing the J-shaped curve.
- Exponential growth is more likely in the area where a forest was destroyed by fire. The first plants that found suitable habitat there would encounter an abundance of space, nutrients, and light. In the undisturbed forest, competition among plants for these resources would be intense.
- The net population growth is  $\Delta N/\Delta t = bN - mN$ . The annual per capita birth rate,  $b$ , equals 14/1,000, or 0.014, and the per capita death rate,  $m$ , equals 8/1,000, or 0.008. Therefore, the net population growth in 2011 was

$$\frac{\Delta N}{\Delta t} = (0.014 \times 311,000,000) - (0.008 \times 311,000,000)$$

or 1.87 million people. To determine whether the population is growing exponentially, you would need to determine whether  $r_{inst} > 0$  and if it is constant through time (across multiple years).

#### Concept Check 53.3

- When  $N$  (population size) is small, there are relatively few individuals producing offspring. When  $N$  is large, near the carrying capacity, the per capita growth rate is relatively small because it is limited by available resources. The steepest part of the logistic growth curve corresponds to a population with a number of reproducing individuals that is substantial but not yet near carrying capacity.
- All else being equal, you would expect a plant species to have a larger carrying capacity at the equator than at high latitudes because there is more incident sunlight near the equator.
- If a population becomes too crowded, the likelihood of disease and mortality may increase because of the effects of pathogens. Thus, pathogens can reduce the long-term carrying capacity of a population.

#### Concept Check 53.4

- The constant, spring-fed stream. In more constant physical conditions, populations are more stable and competition for resources is more likely. In such conditions, larger, well-provisioned young typical of iteroparous species have a better chance of surviving.
- By preferentially investing in the eggs it lays in the nest, the peacock wrasse increases their probability of survival. The eggs it disperses widely and does not provide care for are less likely to survive, at least some of the time, but require a lower investment by the adults. (In this sense, the adults avoid the risk of placing all their eggs in one basket.)
- If a parent's survival is compromised greatly by bearing young during times of stress, the animal's fitness may increase if it abandons its current young and survives to produce healthier young at a later time.

#### Concept Check 53.5

- Three attributes are the size, quality, and isolation of patches. A patch that is larger or of higher quality is more likely to attract individuals and to be a source of individuals for other patches. A patch that is relatively isolated will undergo fewer exchanges of individuals with other patches.
- You would need to study the population for more than one cycle (longer than 10 years and probably at least 20) before having sufficient data to examine changes through time. Otherwise, it would be impossible to know whether an observed decrease in the population size reflected a long-term trend or was part of the normal cycle.
- In negative feedback, the output, or product, of a process slows that process. In populations that have a density-dependent birth rate, such as dune fescue grass, an accumulation of product (more individuals, resulting in a higher population density) slows the process (population growth) by decreasing the birth rate.

#### Concept Check 53.6

- A bottom-heavy age structure, with a disproportionate number of young people, portends continuing growth of the population as these young people begin reproducing. In contrast, a more evenly distributed age structure predicts a more stable population size, and a top-heavy age structure predicts a decrease in population size because relatively fewer young people are reproducing.
- The growth rate of Earth's human population has dropped by half since the 1960s, from 2.2% in 1962 to 1.1% today. Nonetheless, growth has not slowed much because the smaller growth rate is counterbalanced by increased population size; the number of extra people on Earth each year remains enormous—approximately 78 million.
- Each of us influences our ecological footprint by how we live—what we eat, how much energy we use, and the amount of waste we generate—as well as by how many children we have. Making choices that reduce our demand for resources makes our ecological footprint smaller.

#### Summary of Key Concepts Questions

- 53.1** Ecologists can potentially estimate birth rates by counting the number of young born each year, and they can estimate death rates by seeing how the number of adults changes each year. **53.2** Under the exponential model, both populations

will continue to grow to infinite size, regardless of the specific value of  $r_{inst}$  (see Figure 53.8). **53.3** There are many things you can do to increase the carrying capacity of the species, including increasing its food supply, protecting it from predators, and providing more sites for nesting or reproduction. **53.4** Two key factors appear to be the survival rate of the offspring and the chance that adults will live long enough to reproduce again. **53.5** An example of a biotic factor would be disease caused by a pathogen; natural disasters, such as floods and storms, are examples of abiotic factors. **53.6** Humans are unique in our potential ability to reduce global population through contraception and family planning. Humans also are capable of consciously choosing their diet and personal lifestyle, and these choices influence the number of people Earth can support.

#### Test Your Understanding

1. b 2. a 3. a 4. d 5. c 6. b 7. c 8. d 9. a 10. a

### Chapter 54

#### Figure Questions

**Figure 54.3** Its realized and fundamental niches would be similar, unlike those of *Chthamalus*. **Figure 54.15** The number of other organism types eaten is zero for phytoplankton; one for copepods, crab-eater seals, baleen whales, and sperm whales; two for krill, carnivorous plankton, and elephant seals; three for squids, fishes, leopard seals, and humans; and five for birds and smaller toothed whales. The two groups that both consume and are consumed by each other are fishes and squids. **Figure 54.18** The death of individuals of *Mytilus*, a dominant species, should open up space for other species and increase species richness even in the absence of *Pisaster*. **Figure 54.23** At the earliest stages of primary succession, free-living prokaryotes in the soil would reduce atmospheric  $N_2$  to  $NH_3$ . Symbiotic nitrogen fixation could not occur until plants were present at the site.

**Figure 54.26** Other factors not included in the model must contribute to the number of species. **Figure 54.28** Shrew populations in different locations and habitats might show substantial genetic variation in their susceptibility to the Lyme pathogen. Further studies would be needed to test the generality of the study's results.

#### Concept Check 54.1

1. Interspecific competition has negative effects on both species ( $-/-$ ). In predation, the predator population benefits at the expense of the prey population ( $+/-$ ). Mutualism is a symbiosis in which both species benefit ( $+/+$ ). 2. One of the competing species will become locally extinct because of the greater reproductive success of the more efficient competitor. 3. By specializing in eating seeds of a single plant species, individuals of the two finch species may be less likely to come into contact in the separate habitats, reinforcing a reproductive barrier to hybridization.

#### Concept Check 54.2

1. Species richness, the number of species in the community, and relative abundance, the proportions of the community represented by the various species, both contribute to species diversity. Compared to a community with a very high proportion of one species, one with a more even proportion of species is considered more diverse. 2. A food chain presents a set of one-way transfers of food energy up to successively higher trophic levels. A food web documents how food chains are linked together, with many species weaving into the web at more than one trophic level. 3. According to the bottom-up model, adding extra predators would have little effect on lower trophic levels, particularly vegetation. If the top-down model applied, increased bobcat numbers would decrease raccoon numbers, increase snake numbers, decrease mouse numbers, and increase grass biomass.

#### Concept Check 54.3

1. High levels of disturbance are generally so disruptive that they eliminate many species from communities, leaving the community dominated by a few tolerant species. Low levels of disturbance permit competitively dominant species to exclude other species from the community. But moderate levels of disturbance can facilitate coexistence of a greater number of species in a community by preventing competitively dominant species from becoming abundant enough to eliminate other species from the community. 2. Early successional species can facilitate the arrival of other species in many ways, including increasing the fertility or water-holding capacity of soils or providing shelter to seedlings from wind and intense sunlight. 3. The absence of fire for 100 years would represent a change to a low level of disturbance. According to the intermediate disturbance hypothesis, this change should cause diversity to decline as competitively dominant species gain sufficient time to exclude less competitive species.

#### Concept Check 54.4

1. Ecologists propose that the greater species richness of tropical regions is the result of their longer evolutionary history and the greater solar energy input and water availability in tropical regions. 2. Immigration of species to islands declines with distance from the mainland and increases with island area. Extinction of species is lower on larger islands and on less isolated islands. Since the number of species on islands is largely determined by the difference between rates of immigration and extinction, the number of species will be highest on large islands near the mainland and lowest on small islands far from the mainland. 3. Because of their greater mobility, birds disperse to islands more often than snakes and lizards, so birds should have greater richness.

#### Concept Check 54.5

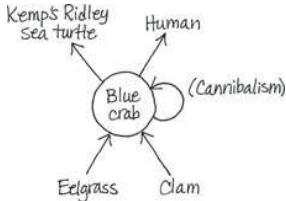
1. Pathogens are microorganisms, viruses, viroids, or prions that cause disease. 2. To keep the rabies virus out, you could ban imports of all mammals, including pets. Potentially, you could also attempt to vaccinate all dogs in the British Isles against the virus. A more practical approach might be to quarantine all pets brought into the country that are potential carriers of the disease, the approach the British government actually takes.

#### Summary of Key Concepts Questions

**54.1** Note: Sample answers follow; other answers could also be correct. Competition: a fox and a bobcat competing for prey. Predation: an orca eating a sea otter. Herbivory: a bison grazing in a prairie. Parasitism: a parasitoid wasp that lays its eggs on a caterpillar. Mutualism: a fungus and an alga that make up a lichen. Commensalism: a remora attached to a whale. Facilitation: a flowering plant and its pollinator. **54.2** Not necessarily if the more species-rich community is dominated by only one or a few species. **54.3** Because of the presence of species initially, the disturbance would initiate secondary succession in spite of its severe appearance. **54.4** Glaciations have severely reduced diversity in northern temperate, boreal, and Arctic ecosystems, compared to tropical ecosystems. **54.5** A host is required to complete the pathogen's life cycle, but a vector is not. Vectors are intermediate species that merely transport a pathogen to its host.

#### Test Your Understanding

1. d 2. c 3. c 4. c 5. b 6. c 7. d 8. b  
**9.** Community 1:  $H = -(0.05 \ln 0.05 + 0.05 \ln 0.05 + 0.85 \ln 0.85 + 0.05 \ln 0.05) = 0.59$ . Community 2:  $H = -(0.30 \ln 0.30 + 0.40 \ln 0.40 + 0.30 \ln 0.30) = 1.1$ . Community 2 is more diverse. **10.** Crab numbers should increase, reducing the abundance of eelgrass.



### Chapter 55

#### Figure Questions

**Figure 55.6** Wetlands, coral reefs, and coastal zones cover areas too small to show up clearly on global maps. **Figure 55.7** The availability of nutrients, particularly nitrogen, phosphorus, and iron, as well as temperature, is likely to limit primary production in the oceans. **Figure 55.8** If the new duck farms made nitrogen available in rich supply, as phosphorus already is, then adding extra nitrogen in the experiment would not increase phytoplankton density. **Figure 55.13** The lichen symbiosis allows the photosynthetic symbiont to photosynthesize and, in cases where it is a cyanobacterium, to fix nitrogen. The fungal symbiont provides the photosynthetic symbiont with a protective environment as well as phosphorus and other soil nutrients. Lichens are particularly abundant in nutrient-poor habitats such as those found in the Arctic tundra. **Figure 55.15** Water availability is probably another factor that varied across the sites. Such factors not included in the experimental design could make the results more difficult to interpret. Multiple factors can also covary in nature, so ecologists must be careful that the factor they are studying is actually causing the observed response and is not just correlated with it.

#### Concept Check 55.1

1. Energy passes through an ecosystem, entering as sunlight and leaving as heat. It is not recycled within the ecosystem. 2. You would need to know how much biomass the wildebeests ate from your plot and how much nitrogen was contained in that biomass. You would also need to know how much nitrogen they deposited in urine or feces. 3. The second law states that in any energy transfer or transformation, some of the energy is dissipated to the surroundings as heat. This "escape" of energy from an ecosystem is offset by the continuous influx of solar radiation.

#### Concept Check 55.2

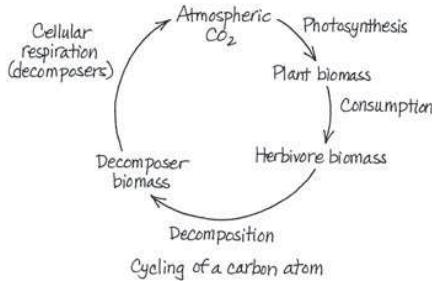
1. Only a fraction of solar radiation strikes plants or algae, only a portion of that fraction is of wavelengths suitable for photosynthesis, and much energy is lost as a result of reflection or heating of plant tissue. 2. By manipulating the level of the factors of interest, such as phosphorus availability or soil moisture, and measuring responses by primary producers 3. The enzyme rubisco, which catalyzes the first step in the Calvin cycle, is the most abundant protein on Earth. Photosynthetic organisms require considerable nitrogen to make rubisco. Phosphorus is also needed as a component of several metabolites in the Calvin cycle and as a component of both ATP and NADPH (see Figure 10.19).

**Concept Check 55.3**

1. 20 J; 40% 2. Nicotine protects the plant from herbivores. 3. Total net production is  $10,000 + 1,000 + 100 + 10 \text{ J} = 11,110 \text{ J}$ . At steady state, this is the amount of energy theoretically available to detritivores.

**Concept Check 55.4**

1. For example, for the carbon cycle:



2. Removal of the trees stops nitrogen uptake from the soil, allowing nitrate to accumulate there. The nitrate is washed away by precipitation and enters the streams. 3. Most of the nutrients in a tropical rain forest are contained in the trees, so removing the trees by logging rapidly depletes nutrients from the ecosystem. The nutrients that remain in the soil are quickly carried away into streams and groundwater by the abundant precipitation.

**Concept Check 55.5**

- The main goal is to restore degraded ecosystems to a more natural state.
- The Kissimmee River project returns the flow of water to the original channel and restores natural flow, a self-sustaining outcome. Ecologists at the Maungataturi reserve will need to maintain the integrity of the fence indefinitely, an outcome that is not self-sustaining in the long term.

**Summary of Key Concepts Questions**

**55.1** Because energy conversions are inefficient, with some energy inevitably lost as heat, you would expect that a given mass of primary producers would support a smaller biomass of secondary producers. **55.2** For estimates of NEP, you need to measure the respiration of all organisms in an ecosystem, not just the respiration of primary producers. In a sample of ocean water, primary producers and other organisms are usually mixed together, making their respective respirations hard to separate. **55.3** Runners use much more energy in respiration when they are running than when they are sedentary, reducing their production efficiency. **55.4** Factors other than temperature, including a shortage of water and nutrients, slow decomposition in hot deserts. **55.5** If the topsoil and deeper soil are kept separate, you could return the deeper soil to the site first and then apply the more fertile topsoil to improve the success of revegetation and other restoration efforts.

**Test Your Understanding**

1. c 2. b 3. a 4. c 5. a 6. b 7. d 8. d

## Chapter 56

**Figure Questions**

**Figure 56.4** You would need to know the complete range of the species and that it is missing across all of that range. You would also need to be certain that the species isn't hidden, as might be the case for an animal that is hibernating underground or a plant that is present in the form of seeds or spores. **Figure 56.9** The two examples are similar in that segments of DNA from the harvested samples were analyzed and compared with segments from specimens of known origin. One difference is that the whale researchers investigated relatedness at species and population levels to determine whether illegal activity had occurred, whereas the elephant investigators determined relatedness at the population level to determine the precise location of the poaching. Another difference is that mtDNA was used for the whale study, whereas nuclear DNA was used for the elephant study. The primary limitations of such approaches are the need to have (or generate) a reference database and the requirement that the organisms have sufficient variation in their DNA to reveal the relatedness of samples. **Figure 56.11** The higher the pH, the lower the acidity. Thus, the precipitation in this forest is becoming less acidic. **Figure 56.14** Because the population of Illinois birds has a different genetic makeup than birds in other regions, you would want to maintain to the greatest extent possible the frequency of beneficial genes or alleles found only in that population. In restoration, preserving genetic diversity in a species is as important as increasing organism numbers. **Figure 56.16** The natural disturbance regime in this habitat includes frequent fires that clear undergrowth but do not kill mature pine trees. Without these fires, the undergrowth quickly fills in and the habitat becomes unsuitable for red-cockaded woodpeckers. **Figure 56.17** The photo shows edges between forest and grassland ecosystems, grassland and river ecosystems, and grassland and lake ecosystems.

**Concept Check 56.1**

1. In addition to species loss, the biodiversity crisis includes the loss of genetic diversity within populations and species and the degradation of entire ecosystems. 2. Habitat destruction, such as deforestation, channelizing of rivers, or conversion of natural ecosystems to agriculture or cities, deprives species of places to live. Introduced species, which are transported by humans to regions outside their native range, where they are not controlled by their natural pathogens or predators, often reduce the population sizes of native species through competition or predation. Overharvesting has reduced populations of plants and animals or driven them to extinction. Finally, global change is altering the environment to the extent that it reduces the capacity of Earth to sustain life. 3. If both populations breed separately, then gene flow between the populations would not occur and genetic differences between them would be greater. As a result, the loss of genetic diversity would be greater than if the populations interbreed.

**Concept Check 56.2**

- Reduced genetic variation decreases the capacity of a population to evolve in the face of change. 2. The effective population size,  $N_e$ , would be  $4(30 \times 10)/(30 + 10) = 30$  birds. 3. Because millions of people use the greater Yellowstone ecosystem each year, it would be impossible to eliminate all contact between people and bears. Instead, you might try to reduce the kinds of encounters where bears are killed. You might recommend lower speed limits on roads in the park, adjust the timing or location of hunting seasons (where hunting is allowed outside the park) to minimize contact with mother bears and cubs, and provide financial incentives for livestock owners to try alternative means of protecting livestock, such as using guard dogs.

**Concept Check 56.3**

- A small area supporting numerous endemic species as well as a large number of endangered and threatened species 2. Zoned reserves may provide sustained supplies of forest products, water, hydroelectric power, educational opportunities, and income from tourism. 3. Habitat corridors can increase the rate of movement or dispersal of organisms between habitat patches and thus the rate of gene flow between subpopulations. They thus help prevent a decrease in fitness attributable to inbreeding. They can also minimize interactions between organisms and humans as the organisms disperse; in cases involving potential predators, such as bears or large cats, minimizing such interactions is desirable.

**Concept Check 56.4**

- Adding nutrients causes population explosions of algae and the organisms that feed on them. Increased respiration by algae and consumers, including detritivores, depletes the lake's oxygen, which the fish require. 2. Because higher temperatures lead to faster decomposition, organic matter in these soils could be quickly decomposed to CO<sub>2</sub>, speeding up global warming. 3. Reduced concentrations of ozone in the atmosphere increase the amount of UV radiation that reaches Earth's surface and the organisms living there. UV radiation can cause mutations by producing disruptive thymine dimers in DNA.

**Concept Check 56.5**

- Sustainable development is an approach to development that works toward the long-term prosperity of human societies and the ecosystems that support them, which requires linking the biological sciences with the social sciences, economics, and humanities. 2. Biophilia, our sense of connection to nature and all forms of life, may act as a significant motivation for the development of an environmental ethic that resolves not to allow species to become extinct or ecosystems to be destroyed. Such an ethic is necessary if we are to become more attentive and effective custodians of the environment. 3. At a minimum, you would want to know the size of the population and the average reproductive rate of individuals in it. To develop the fishery sustainably, you would seek a harvest rate that maintains the population near its original size and maximizes its harvest in the long term rather than the short term.

**Summary of Key Concepts Questions**

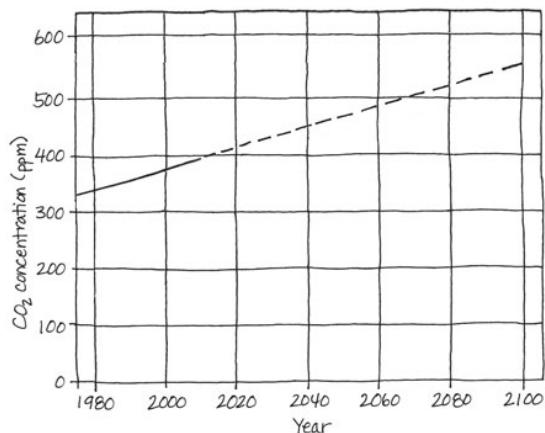
**56.1** Nature provides us with many beneficial services, including a supply of reliable, clean water, the production of food and fiber, and the dilution and detoxification of our pollutants. **56.2** A more genetically diverse population is better able to withstand pressures from disease or environmental change, making it less likely to become extinct over a given period of time. **56.3** Habitat fragmentation can isolate populations, leading to inbreeding and genetic drift, and it can make populations more susceptible to local extinctions resulting from the effects of pathogens, parasites, or predators. **56.4** It's healthier to feed at a lower trophic level because biological magnification increases the concentration of toxins at higher levels. **56.5** One goal of conservation biology is to preserve as many species as possible. Sustainable approaches that maintain the quality of habitats are required for the long-term survival of organisms.

**Test Your Understanding**

1. c 2. d 3. b 4. a 5. b 6. a

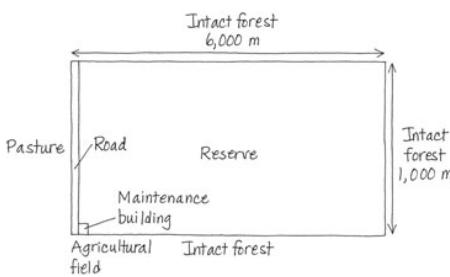
7. (a) The average CO<sub>2</sub> concentration was approximately 330 ppm in 1975 and approximately 394 ppm in 2012. (b) The rate of CO<sub>2</sub> concentration increase was  $(394 \text{ ppm} - 330 \text{ ppm})/(2012 - 1975) = 64 \text{ ppm}/37 \text{ years} = 1.73 \text{ ppm/yr}$ . (c) If this rate continues, the concentration in 2100 will be approximately 550 ppm ( $1.73 \text{ ppm/yr} \times 88 \text{ yr} = 152 \text{ ppm}$  for the increase from 2012–2100 + 394 ppm in 2012 = 546 ppm, rounded off to 550 ppm).

(d)



- (e) The actual rise in CO<sub>2</sub> concentration could be larger or smaller, depending on Earth's human population, per capita energy use, and the extent to which societies take steps to reduce CO<sub>2</sub> emissions, including replacing fossil fuels with renewable or nuclear fuels. (f) Additional scientific data will be important for many reasons, such as determining how quickly greenhouse gases such as CO<sub>2</sub> are removed from the atmosphere by the biosphere.

9.



To minimize the area of forest into which the cowbirds penetrate, you should locate the road along one edge of the reserve. Any other location would increase the area of affected habitat. Similarly, the maintenance building should be in a corner of the reserve to minimize the area susceptible to cowbirds.

APPENDIX B PERIODIC TABLE OF THE ELEMENTS

A diagram of a carbon-12 atom. It features a yellow square nucleus containing the number '6' at the top and '12' at the bottom. A black circle with the letter 'C' is positioned to the right of the nucleus. Two arrows point from text labels to the diagram: one from 'Atomic number (number of protons)' to the '6', and another from 'Element symbol' to the 'C'. A third arrow points from 'Atomic mass (number of protons plus number of neutrons averaged over all isotopes)' to the '12'.

Metals

Metalloids

## Nonmetals

## Representative elements

Alkali      Alkaline  
metals      earth  
metals

**Groups:** Elements in a vertical column have the same number of electrons in their valence (outer) shell and thus have similar chemical properties.

1  
Period      Group  
number      1A

**Periods:** Each horizontal row contains elements with the same total number of electron shells. Across each period, elements are ordered by increasing atomic number.

\*Lanthanides

|                          |                          |                          |                          |                          |                          |                          |                          |                          |                          |                           |                           |                           |                           |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| 58<br><b>Ce</b><br>140.1 | 59<br><b>Pr</b><br>140.9 | 60<br><b>Nd</b><br>144.2 | 61<br><b>Pm</b><br>(145) | 62<br><b>Sm</b><br>150.4 | 63<br><b>Eu</b><br>152.0 | 64<br><b>Gd</b><br>157.3 | 65<br><b>Tb</b><br>158.9 | 66<br><b>Dy</b><br>162.5 | 67<br><b>Ho</b><br>164.9 | 68<br><b>Er</b><br>167.3  | 69<br><b>Tm</b><br>168.9  | 70<br><b>Yb</b><br>173.0  | 71<br><b>Lu</b><br>175.0  |
| 90<br><b>Th</b><br>232.0 | 91<br><b>Pa</b><br>231.0 | 92<br><b>U</b><br>238.0  | 93<br><b>Np</b><br>(237) | 94<br><b>Pu</b><br>(244) | 95<br><b>Am</b><br>(243) | 96<br><b>Cm</b><br>(247) | 97<br><b>Bk</b><br>(247) | 98<br><b>Cf</b><br>(251) | 99<br><b>Es</b><br>(252) | 100<br><b>Fm</b><br>(257) | 101<br><b>Md</b><br>(258) | 102<br><b>No</b><br>(259) | 103<br><b>Lr</b><br>(260) |

†Actinides

| Name (Symbol)    | Atomic Number | Name (Symbol)     | Atomic Number | Name (Symbol)    | Atomic Number | Name (Symbol)      | Atomic Number | Name (Symbol)   | Atomic Number |
|------------------|---------------|-------------------|---------------|------------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------|-----------------|---------------|
| Actinium (Ac)    | 89            | Copernicium (Cn)  | 112           | Iodine (I)       | 53            | Osmium (Os)        | 76            | Silicon (Si)    | 14            |
| Aluminum (Al)    | 13            | Copper (Cu)       | 29            | Iridium (Ir)     | 77            | Oxygen (O)         | 8             | Silver (Ag)     | 47            |
| Americium (Am)   | 95            | Curium (Cm)       | 96            | Iron (Fe)        | 26            | Palladium (Pd)     | 46            | Sodium (Na)     | 11            |
| Antimony (Sb)    | 51            | Darmstadtium (Ds) | 110           | Krypton (Kr)     | 36            | Phosphorus (P)     | 15            | Strontium (Sr)  | 38            |
| Argon (Ar)       | 18            | Dubnium (Db)      | 105           | Lanthanum (La)   | 57            | Platinum (Pt)      | 78            | Sulfur (S)      | 16            |
| Arsenic (As)     | 33            | Dysprosium (Dy)   | 66            | Lawrencium (Lr)  | 103           | Plutonium (Pu)     | 94            | Tantalum (Ta)   | 73            |
| Astatine (At)    | 85            | Einsteinium (Es)  | 99            | Lead (Pb)        | 82            | Polonium (Po)      | 84            | Technetium (Tc) | 43            |
| Barium (Ba)      | 56            | Erbium (Er)       | 68            | Lithium (Li)     | 3             | Potassium (K)      | 19            | Tellurium (Te)  | 52            |
| Berkelium (Bk)   | 97            | Europium (Eu)     | 63            | Livermorium (Lv) | 116           | Praseodymium (Pr)  | 59            | Terbium (Tb)    | 65            |
| Beryllium (Be)   | 4             | Fermium (Fm)      | 100           | Lutetium (Lu)    | 71            | Promethium (Pm)    | 61            | Thallium (Tl)   | 81            |
| Bismuth (Bi)     | 83            | Flerovium (Fl)    | 114           | Magnesium (Mg)   | 12            | Protactinium (Pa)  | 91            | Thorium (Th)    | 90            |
| Bohrium (Bh)     | 107           | Fluorine (F)      | 9             | Manganese (Mn)   | 25            | Radium (Ra)        | 88            | Thulium (Tm)    | 69            |
| Boron (B)        | 5             | Francium (Fr)     | 87            | Meitnerium (Mt)  | 109           | Radon (Rn)         | 86            | Tin (Sn)        | 50            |
| Bromine (Br)     | 35            | Gadolinium (Gd)   | 64            | Mendelevium (Md) | 101           | Rhenium (Re)       | 75            | Titanium (Ti)   | 22            |
| Cadmium (Cd)     | 48            | Gallium (Ga)      | 31            | Mercury (Hg)     | 80            | Rhodium (Rh)       | 45            | Tungsten (W)    | 74            |
| Calcium (Ca)     | 20            | Germanium (Ge)    | 32            | Molybdenum (Mo)  | 42            | Roentgenium (Rg)   | 111           | Uranium (U)     | 92            |
| Californium (Cf) | 98            | Gold (Au)         | 79            | Neodymium (Nd)   | 60            | Rubidium (Rb)      | 37            | Vanadium (V)    | 23            |
| Carbon (C)       | 6             | Hafnium (Hf)      | 72            | Neon (Ne)        | 10            | Ruthenium (Ru)     | 44            | Xenon (Xe)      | 54            |
| Cerium (Ce)      | 58            | Hassium (Hs)      | 108           | Neptunium (Np)   | 93            | Rutherfordium (Rf) | 104           | Ytterbium (Yb)  | 70            |
| Cesium (Cs)      | 55            | Helium (He)       | 2             | Nickel (Ni)      | 28            | Samarium (Sm)      | 62            | Yttrium (Y)     | 39            |
| Chlorine (Cl)    | 17            | Holmium (Ho)      | 67            | Niobium (Nb)     | 41            | Scandium (Sc)      | 21            | Zinc (Zn)       | 30            |
| Chromium (Cr)    | 24            | Hydrogen (H)      | 1             | Nitrogen (N)     | 7             | Seaborgium (Sg)    | 106           | Zirconium (Zr)  | 40            |
| Cobalt (Co)      | 27            | Indium (In)       | 49            | Nobelium (No)    | 102           | Selenium (Se)      | 34            |                 |               |

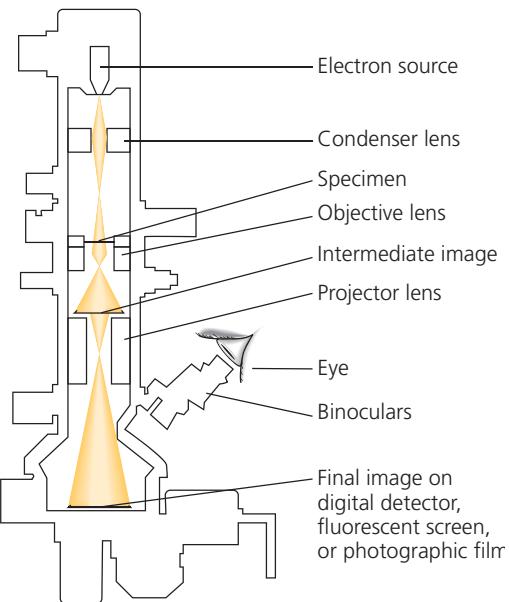
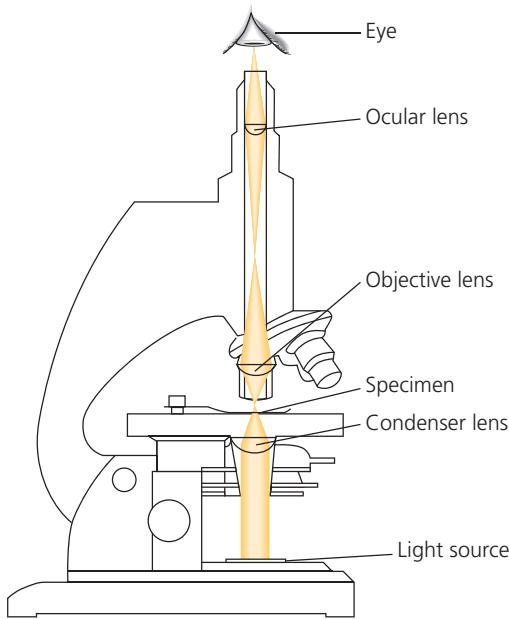
# APPENDIX C THE METRIC SYSTEM



Metric Prefixes:  $10^9$  = giga (G)    $10^{-2}$  = centi (c)    $10^{-9}$  = nano (n)  
 $10^6$  = mega (M)    $10^{-3}$  = milli (m)    $10^{-12}$  = pico (p)  
 $10^3$  = kilo (k)    $10^{-6}$  = micro ( $\mu$ )    $10^{-15}$  = femto (f)

| Measurement                | Unit and Abbreviation                                                          | Metric Equivalent                                       | Metric-to-English Conversion Factor                                                          | English-to-Metric Conversion Factor                                                          |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Length                     | 1 kilometer (km)                                                               | = 1,000 ( $10^3$ ) meters                               | 1 km = 0.62 mile                                                                             | 1 mile = 1.61 km                                                                             |
|                            | 1 meter (m)                                                                    | = 100 ( $10^2$ ) centimeters<br>= 1,000 millimeters     | 1 m = 1.09 yards<br>1 m = 3.28 feet<br>1 m = 39.37 inches                                    | 1 yard = 0.914 m<br>1 foot = 0.305 m                                                         |
|                            | 1 centimeter (cm)                                                              | = 0.01 ( $10^{-2}$ ) meter                              | 1 cm = 0.394 inch                                                                            | 1 foot = 30.5 cm<br>1 inch = 2.54 cm                                                         |
|                            | 1 millimeter (mm)                                                              | = 0.001 ( $10^{-3}$ ) meter                             | 1 mm = 0.039 inch                                                                            |                                                                                              |
|                            | 1 micrometer ( $\mu\text{m}$ )<br>(formerly micron, $\mu$ )                    | = $10^{-6}$ meter ( $10^{-3}$ mm)                       |                                                                                              |                                                                                              |
|                            | 1 nanometer (nm)<br>(formerly millimicron, $\text{m}\mu$ )                     | = $10^{-9}$ meter ( $10^{-3}$ $\mu\text{m}$ )           |                                                                                              |                                                                                              |
|                            | 1 angstrom ( $\text{\AA}$ )                                                    | = $10^{-10}$ meter ( $10^{-4}$ $\mu\text{m}$ )          |                                                                                              |                                                                                              |
| Area                       | 1 hectare (ha)                                                                 | = 10,000 square meters                                  | 1 ha = 2.47 acres                                                                            | 1 acre = 0.405 ha                                                                            |
|                            | 1 square meter ( $\text{m}^2$ )                                                | = 10,000 square centimeters                             | 1 $\text{m}^2$ = 1.196 square yards<br>1 $\text{m}^2$ = 10.764 square feet                   | 1 square yard = 0.8361 $\text{m}^2$<br>1 square foot = 0.0929 $\text{m}^2$                   |
|                            | 1 square centimeter ( $\text{cm}^2$ )                                          | = 100 square millimeters                                | 1 $\text{cm}^2$ = 0.155 square inch                                                          | 1 square inch = 6.4516 $\text{cm}^2$                                                         |
| Mass                       | 1 metric ton (t)                                                               | = 1,000 kilograms                                       | 1 t = 1.103 tons                                                                             | 1 ton = 0.907 t                                                                              |
|                            | 1 kilogram (kg)                                                                | = 1,000 grams                                           | 1 kg = 2.205 pounds                                                                          | 1 pound = 0.4536 kg                                                                          |
|                            | 1 gram (g)                                                                     | = 1,000 milligrams                                      | 1 g = 0.0353 ounce<br>1 g = 15.432 grains                                                    | 1 ounce = 28.35 g                                                                            |
|                            | 1 milligram (mg)                                                               | = $10^{-3}$ gram                                        | 1 mg = approx. 0.015 grain                                                                   |                                                                                              |
|                            | 1 microgram ( $\mu\text{g}$ )                                                  | = $10^{-6}$ gram                                        |                                                                                              |                                                                                              |
| Volume (solids)            | 1 cubic meter ( $\text{m}^3$ )                                                 | = 1,000,000 cubic centimeters                           | 1 $\text{m}^3$ = 1.308 cubic yards<br>1 $\text{m}^3$ = 35.315 cubic feet                     | 1 cubic yard = 0.7646 $\text{m}^3$<br>1 cubic foot = 0.0283 $\text{m}^3$                     |
|                            | 1 cubic centimeter ( $\text{cm}^3$ or cc)                                      | = $10^{-6}$ cubic meter                                 | 1 $\text{cm}^3$ = 0.061 cubic inch                                                           | 1 cubic inch = 16.387 $\text{cm}^3$                                                          |
|                            | 1 cubic millimeter ( $\text{mm}^3$ )                                           | = $10^{-9}$ cubic meter<br>= $10^{-3}$ cubic centimeter |                                                                                              |                                                                                              |
| Volume (liquids and gases) | 1 kiloliter (kL or kl)                                                         | = 1,000 liters                                          | 1 kL = 264.17 gallons                                                                        |                                                                                              |
|                            | 1 liter (L or l)                                                               | = 1,000 milliliters                                     | 1 L = 0.264 gallon<br>1 L = 1.057 quarts                                                     | 1 gallon = 3.785 L<br>1 quart = 0.946 L                                                      |
|                            | 1 milliliter (mL or ml)                                                        | = $10^{-3}$ liter<br>= 1 cubic centimeter               | 1 mL = 0.034 fluid ounce<br>1 mL = approx. 1/4 teaspoon<br>1 mL = approx. 15–16 drops (gtt.) | 1 quart = 946 mL<br>1 pint = 473 mL<br>1 fluid ounce = 29.57 mL<br>1 teaspoon = approx. 5 mL |
|                            | 1 microliter ( $\mu\text{L}$ or $\mu\text{l}$ )                                | = $10^{-6}$ liter ( $10^{-3}$ milliliter)               |                                                                                              |                                                                                              |
| Pressure                   | 1 megapascal (MPa)                                                             | = 1,000 kilopascals                                     | 1 MPa = 10 bars                                                                              | 1 bar = 0.1 MPa                                                                              |
|                            | 1 kilopascal (kPa)                                                             | = 1,000 pascals                                         | 1 kPa = 0.01 bar                                                                             | 1 bar = 100 kPa                                                                              |
|                            | 1 pascal (Pa)                                                                  | = 1 newton/m <sup>2</sup> (N/m <sup>2</sup> )           | 1 Pa = $1.0 \times 10^{-5}$ bar                                                              | 1 bar = $1.0 \times 10^5$ Pa                                                                 |
| Time                       | 1 second (s or sec)                                                            | = $\frac{1}{60}$ minute                                 |                                                                                              |                                                                                              |
|                            | 1 millisecond (ms or msec)                                                     | = $10^{-3}$ second                                      |                                                                                              |                                                                                              |
| Temperature                | Degrees Celsius ( $^\circ\text{C}$ ) (0 K [Kelvin] = $-273.15^\circ\text{C}$ ) |                                                         | $^\circ\text{F} = \frac{9}{5}\text{C} + 32$                                                  | $^\circ\text{C} = \frac{5}{9}(\text{F} - 32)$                                                |

## APPENDIX D A COMPARISON OF THE LIGHT MICROSCOPE AND THE ELECTRON MICROSCOPE



### Light Microscope

In light microscopy, light is focused on a specimen by a glass condenser lens; the image is then magnified by an objective lens and an ocular lens for projection on the eye, digital camera, digital video camera, or photographic film.

### Electron Microscope

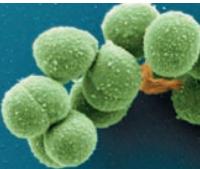
In electron microscopy, a beam of electrons (top of the microscope) is used instead of light, and electromagnets are used instead of glass lenses. The electron beam is focused on the specimen by a condenser lens; the image is magnified by an objective lens and a projector lens for projection on a digital detector, fluorescent screen, or photographic film.

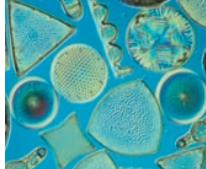
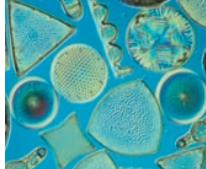
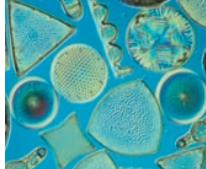
# APPENDIX E CLASSIFICATION OF LIFE



This appendix presents a taxonomic classification for the major extant groups of organisms discussed in this text; not all phyla are included. The classification presented here is based on the three-domain system, which assigns the two major groups of prokaryotes, bacteria and archaea, to separate domains (with eukaryotes making up the third domain).

| DOMAIN BACTERIA                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Proteobacteria</b></li> <li>• <b>Chlamydia</b></li> <li>• <b>Spirochetes</b></li> <li>• <b>Gram-Positive Bacteria</b></li> <li>• <b>Cyanobacteria</b></li> </ul>  |

| DOMAIN ARCHAEA                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Korarchaeota</b></li> <li>• <b>Euryarchaeota</b></li> <li>• <b>Crenarchaeota</b></li> <li>• <b>Nanoarchaeota</b></li> </ul>  |

| DOMAIN EUKARYA                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |               |               |               |               |               |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| <p>In the phylogenetic hypothesis we present in Chapter 28, major clades of eukaryotes are grouped together in the four “supergroups” listed in bold type below and on the facing page. Formerly, all the eukaryotes generally called protists were assigned to a single kingdom, Protista. However, advances in systematics have made it clear that some protists are more closely related to plants, fungi, or animals than they are to other protists. As a result, the kingdom Protista has been abandoned.</p> <table border="0" style="width: 100%;"> <tr> <td style="vertical-align: top;"> <p><b>Excavata</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Diplomonadida ( diplomonads)</li> <li>• Parabasala (parabasalids)</li> <li>• Euglenozoa (euglenozoans)</li> <li>  Kinetoplastida (kinetoplastids)</li> <li>  Euglenophyta (euglenids)</li> </ul> <p><b>“SAR” Clade</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Stramenopila (stramenopiles)</li> <li>  Chrysophyta (golden algae)</li> <li>  Phaeophyta (brown algae)</li> <li>  Bacillariophyta (diatoms)</li> </ul>  </td> <td style="vertical-align: top;"> <p><b>Archaeplastida</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rhodophyta (red algae)</li> <li>• Chlorophyta (green algae: chlorophytes)</li> <li>• Charophyta (green algae: charophytes)</li> <li>• Plantae</li> </ul> <table border="0" style="width: 100%;"> <tr> <td style="vertical-align: top;"> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>  Phylum Hepatophyta (liverworts)</li> <li>  Phylum Bryophyta (mosses)</li> <li>  Phylum Anthocerophyta (hornworts)</li> </ul> </td> <td style="vertical-align: top; text-align: right; font-size: small;"> { Nonvascular<br/>plants (bryophytes) </td></tr> <tr> <td style="vertical-align: top;"> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>  Phylum Lycophyta (lycophytes)</li> <li>  Phylum Monilophyta (ferns, horsetails, whisk ferns)</li> </ul> </td> <td style="vertical-align: top; text-align: right; font-size: small;"> } Seedless vascular<br/>plants </td></tr> <tr> <td style="vertical-align: top;"> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>  Phylum Ginkgophyta (ginkgo)</li> <li>  Phylum Cycadophyta (cycads)</li> <li>  Phylum Gnetales (gnethophytes)</li> <li>  Phylum Coniferophyta (conifers)</li> <li>  Phylum Anthophyta (flowering plants)</li> </ul> </td> <td style="vertical-align: top; text-align: right; font-size: small;"> } Gymnosperms </td></tr> <tr> <td style="vertical-align: top;"></td> <td style="vertical-align: top; text-align: right; font-size: small;"> } Seed plants </td></tr> <tr> <td style="vertical-align: top;"></td> <td style="vertical-align: top; text-align: right; font-size: small;"> } Angiosperms </td></tr> </table>  </td> </tr> </table> | <p><b>Excavata</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Diplomonadida ( diplomonads)</li> <li>• Parabasala (parabasalids)</li> <li>• Euglenozoa (euglenozoans)</li> <li>  Kinetoplastida (kinetoplastids)</li> <li>  Euglenophyta (euglenids)</li> </ul> <p><b>“SAR” Clade</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Stramenopila (stramenopiles)</li> <li>  Chrysophyta (golden algae)</li> <li>  Phaeophyta (brown algae)</li> <li>  Bacillariophyta (diatoms)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <p><b>Archaeplastida</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rhodophyta (red algae)</li> <li>• Chlorophyta (green algae: chlorophytes)</li> <li>• Charophyta (green algae: charophytes)</li> <li>• Plantae</li> </ul> <table border="0" style="width: 100%;"> <tr> <td style="vertical-align: top;"> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>  Phylum Hepatophyta (liverworts)</li> <li>  Phylum Bryophyta (mosses)</li> <li>  Phylum Anthocerophyta (hornworts)</li> </ul> </td> <td style="vertical-align: top; text-align: right; font-size: small;"> { Nonvascular<br/>plants (bryophytes) </td></tr> <tr> <td style="vertical-align: top;"> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>  Phylum Lycophyta (lycophytes)</li> <li>  Phylum Monilophyta (ferns, horsetails, whisk ferns)</li> </ul> </td> <td style="vertical-align: top; text-align: right; font-size: small;"> } Seedless vascular<br/>plants </td></tr> <tr> <td style="vertical-align: top;"> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>  Phylum Ginkgophyta (ginkgo)</li> <li>  Phylum Cycadophyta (cycads)</li> <li>  Phylum Gnetales (gnethophytes)</li> <li>  Phylum Coniferophyta (conifers)</li> <li>  Phylum Anthophyta (flowering plants)</li> </ul> </td> <td style="vertical-align: top; text-align: right; font-size: small;"> } Gymnosperms </td></tr> <tr> <td style="vertical-align: top;"></td> <td style="vertical-align: top; text-align: right; font-size: small;"> } Seed plants </td></tr> <tr> <td style="vertical-align: top;"></td> <td style="vertical-align: top; text-align: right; font-size: small;"> } Angiosperms </td></tr> </table>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>  Phylum Hepatophyta (liverworts)</li> <li>  Phylum Bryophyta (mosses)</li> <li>  Phylum Anthocerophyta (hornworts)</li> </ul> | { Nonvascular<br>plants (bryophytes)                                                                                                             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>  Phylum Lycophyta (lycophytes)</li> <li>  Phylum Monilophyta (ferns, horsetails, whisk ferns)</li> </ul> | } Seedless vascular<br>plants                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>  Phylum Ginkgophyta (ginkgo)</li> <li>  Phylum Cycadophyta (cycads)</li> <li>  Phylum Gnetales (gnethophytes)</li> <li>  Phylum Coniferophyta (conifers)</li> <li>  Phylum Anthophyta (flowering plants)</li> </ul> | } Gymnosperms |               | } Seed plants |               | } Angiosperms |
| <p><b>Excavata</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Diplomonadida ( diplomonads)</li> <li>• Parabasala (parabasalids)</li> <li>• Euglenozoa (euglenozoans)</li> <li>  Kinetoplastida (kinetoplastids)</li> <li>  Euglenophyta (euglenids)</li> </ul> <p><b>“SAR” Clade</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Stramenopila (stramenopiles)</li> <li>  Chrysophyta (golden algae)</li> <li>  Phaeophyta (brown algae)</li> <li>  Bacillariophyta (diatoms)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | <p><b>Archaeplastida</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rhodophyta (red algae)</li> <li>• Chlorophyta (green algae: chlorophytes)</li> <li>• Charophyta (green algae: charophytes)</li> <li>• Plantae</li> </ul> <table border="0" style="width: 100%;"> <tr> <td style="vertical-align: top;"> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>  Phylum Hepatophyta (liverworts)</li> <li>  Phylum Bryophyta (mosses)</li> <li>  Phylum Anthocerophyta (hornworts)</li> </ul> </td> <td style="vertical-align: top; text-align: right; font-size: small;"> { Nonvascular<br/>plants (bryophytes) </td></tr> <tr> <td style="vertical-align: top;"> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>  Phylum Lycophyta (lycophytes)</li> <li>  Phylum Monilophyta (ferns, horsetails, whisk ferns)</li> </ul> </td> <td style="vertical-align: top; text-align: right; font-size: small;"> } Seedless vascular<br/>plants </td></tr> <tr> <td style="vertical-align: top;"> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>  Phylum Ginkgophyta (ginkgo)</li> <li>  Phylum Cycadophyta (cycads)</li> <li>  Phylum Gnetales (gnethophytes)</li> <li>  Phylum Coniferophyta (conifers)</li> <li>  Phylum Anthophyta (flowering plants)</li> </ul> </td> <td style="vertical-align: top; text-align: right; font-size: small;"> } Gymnosperms </td></tr> <tr> <td style="vertical-align: top;"></td> <td style="vertical-align: top; text-align: right; font-size: small;"> } Seed plants </td></tr> <tr> <td style="vertical-align: top;"></td> <td style="vertical-align: top; text-align: right; font-size: small;"> } Angiosperms </td></tr> </table>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>  Phylum Hepatophyta (liverworts)</li> <li>  Phylum Bryophyta (mosses)</li> <li>  Phylum Anthocerophyta (hornworts)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | { Nonvascular<br>plants (bryophytes)                                                                                                                                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>  Phylum Lycophyta (lycophytes)</li> <li>  Phylum Monilophyta (ferns, horsetails, whisk ferns)</li> </ul> | } Seedless vascular<br>plants                                                                                                                    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>  Phylum Ginkgophyta (ginkgo)</li> <li>  Phylum Cycadophyta (cycads)</li> <li>  Phylum Gnetales (gnethophytes)</li> <li>  Phylum Coniferophyta (conifers)</li> <li>  Phylum Anthophyta (flowering plants)</li> </ul> | } Gymnosperms                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |               | } Seed plants |               | } Angiosperms |               |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>  Phylum Hepatophyta (liverworts)</li> <li>  Phylum Bryophyta (mosses)</li> <li>  Phylum Anthocerophyta (hornworts)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | { Nonvascular<br>plants (bryophytes)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |               |               |               |               |               |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>  Phylum Lycophyta (lycophytes)</li> <li>  Phylum Monilophyta (ferns, horsetails, whisk ferns)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | } Seedless vascular<br>plants                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |               |               |               |               |               |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>  Phylum Ginkgophyta (ginkgo)</li> <li>  Phylum Cycadophyta (cycads)</li> <li>  Phylum Gnetales (gnethophytes)</li> <li>  Phylum Coniferophyta (conifers)</li> <li>  Phylum Anthophyta (flowering plants)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | } Gymnosperms                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |               |               |               |               |               |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | } Seed plants                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |               |               |               |               |               |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | } Angiosperms                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |               |               |               |               |               |



## DOMAIN EUKARYA, continued

### **Unikonta**

- Amoebozoa (amoebozoans)
  - Myxogastrida (plasmoidal slime molds)
  - Dictyostelida (cellular slime molds)
  - Tubulinida (tubulinids)
  - Entamoeba (entamoebas)
- Nucleariida (nucleariids)
- Fungi
  - \*Phylum Chytridiomycota (chytrids)
  - \*Phylum Zygomycota (zygomycetes)
  - Phylum Glomeromycota (glomeromycetes)
  - Phylum Ascomycota (ascomycetes)
  - Phylum Basidiomycota (basidiomycetes)



- Choanoflagellata (choanoflagellates)
- Animalia
  - Phylum Porifera (sponges)
  - Phylum Ctenophora (comb jellies)
  - Phylum Cnidaria (cnidarians)
    - Medusozoa (hydrozoans, jellies, box jellies)
    - Anthozoa (sea anemones and most corals)
  - Phylum Acoela (acoel flatworms)
  - Phylum Placozoa (placozoans)
- Lophotrochozoa (lophotrochozoans)**
  - Phylum Platyhelminthes (flatworms)
    - Catenulida (chain worms)
    - Rhabditophora (planarians, flukes, tapeworms)
  - Phylum Nemertea (proboscis worms)
  - Phylum Ectoprocta (ectoprocts)
  - Phylum Brachiopoda (brachiopods)
  - Phylum Rotifera (rotifers)
  - Phylum Cycliophora (cycliophorans)
  - Phylum Mollusca (molluscs)
    - Polyplacophora (chitons)
    - Gastropoda (gastropods)
    - Bivalvia (bivalves)
    - Cephalopoda (cephalopods)
  - Phylum Annelida (segmented worms)
    - Errantia (errantians)
    - Sedentaria (sedentarians)
  - Phylum Acanthocephala (spiny-headed worms)

### Ecdysozoa (ecdysozoans)

- Phylum Loricifera (loriciferans)
- Phylum Priapula (priapulans)
- Phylum Nematoda (roundworms)
- Phylum Arthropoda (This survey groups arthropods into a single phylum, but some zoologists now split the arthropods into multiple phyla.)
  - Chelicerata (horseshoe crabs, arachnids)
  - Myriapoda (millipedes, centipedes)
  - Pancrustacea (crustaceans, insects)
  - Phylum Tardigrada (tardigrades)
  - Phylum Onychophora (velvet worms)

### Deuterostomia (deuterostomes)

- Phylum Hemichordata (hemichordates)
- Phylum Echinodermata (echinoderms)
  - Asteroidea (sea stars, sea daisies)
  - Ophiuroidea (brittle stars)
  - Echinoidea (sea urchins, sand dollars)
  - Crinoidea (sea lilies)
  - Holothuroidea (sea cucumbers)
- Phylum Chordata (chordates)
  - Cephalochordata (cephalochordates: lancelets)
  - Urochordata (urochordates: tunicates)
  - Cyclostomata (cyclostomes)
    - Myxini (hagfishes)
    - Petromyzontida (lampreys)
  - Gnathostomata (gnathostomes)
    - Chondrichthyes (sharks, rays, chimaeras)
    - Actinopterygii (ray-finned fishes)
    - Actinistia (coelacanths)
    - Dipnoi (lungfishes)
    - Amphibia (amphibians: frogs, salamanders, caecilians)
    - Reptilia (reptiles: tuataras, lizards, snakes, turtles, crocodilians, birds)
    - Mammalia (mammals)

Vertebrates



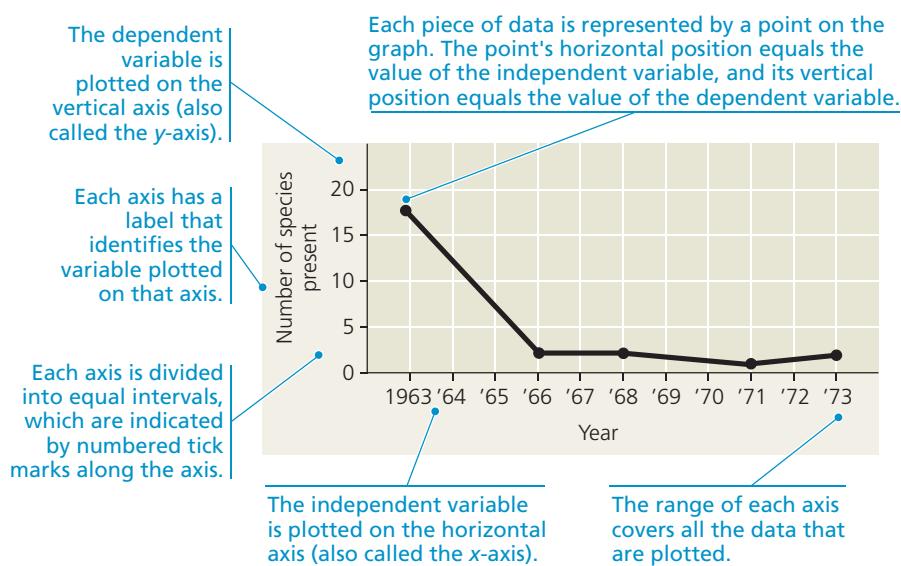
# APPENDIX F SCIENTIFIC SKILLS REVIEW



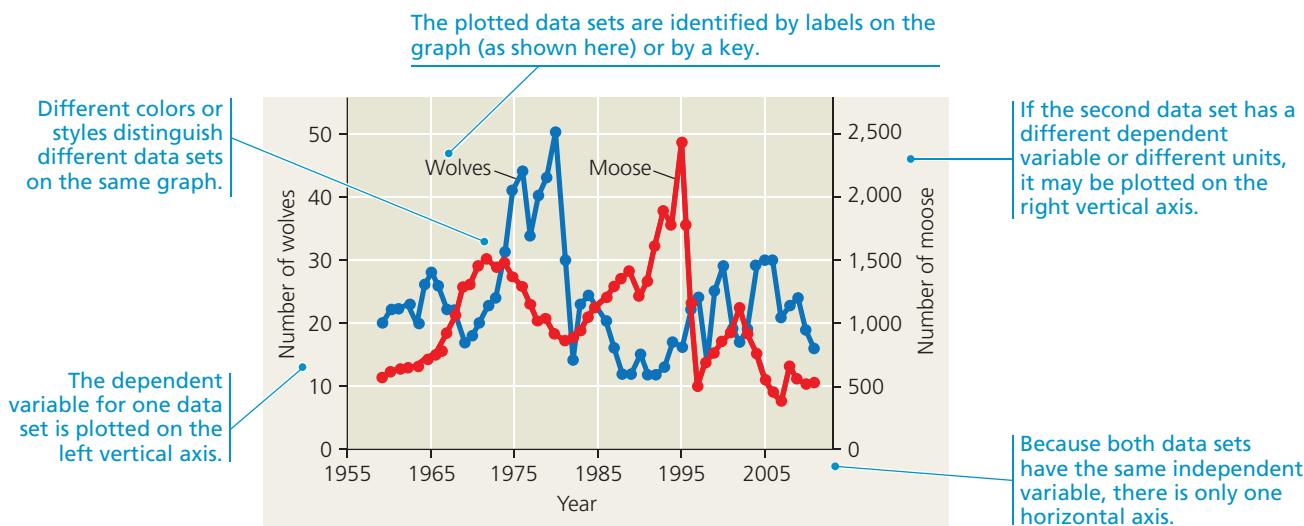
## Graphs

Graphs provide a visual representation of numerical data. They may reveal patterns or trends in the data that are not easy to recognize in a table. A graph is a diagram that shows how one variable in a data set is related (or perhaps not related) to another variable. If one variable is dependent on the other, the dependent variable is typically plotted on the *y*-axis and the independent variable on the *x*-axis. Types of graphs that are frequently used in biology include scatter plots, line graphs, bar graphs, and histograms.

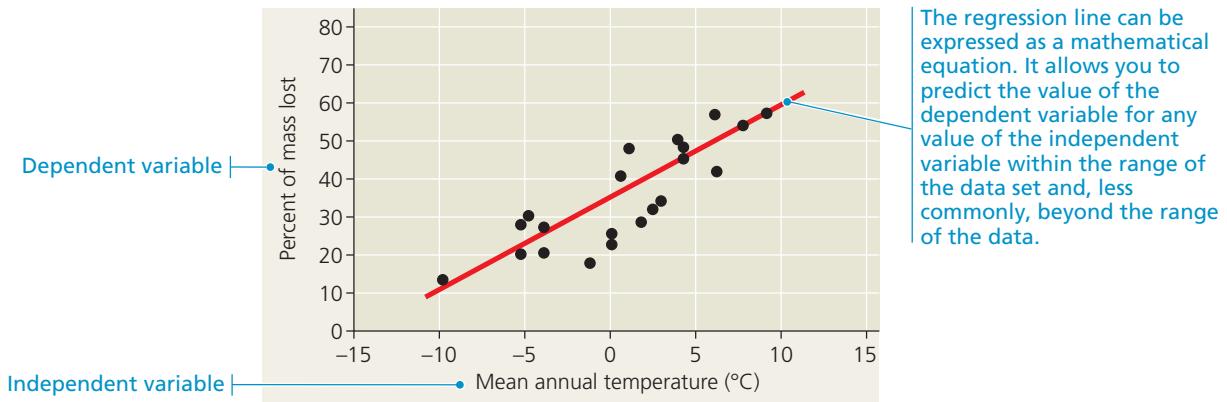
- A **scatter plot** is used when the data for all variables are numerical and continuous. Each piece of data is represented by a point. In a **line graph**, each data point is connected to the next point in the data set with a straight line, as in the graph to the right. (To practice making and interpreting scatter plots and line graphs, see the Scientific Skills Exercises in Chapters 2, 3, 7, 8, 10, 13, 19, 24, 34, 43, 47, 49, 50, 52, 54, and 56.)



- ▼ Two or more data sets can be plotted on the same line graph to show how two dependent variables are related to the same independent variable. (To practice making and interpreting line graphs with two or more data sets, see the Scientific Skills Exercises in Chapters 7, 43, 47, 49, 50, 52, and 56.)

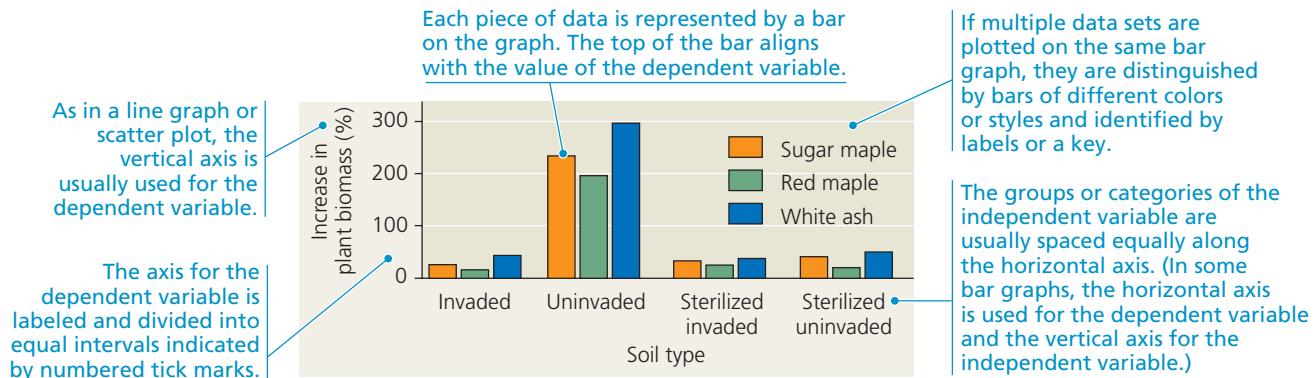


▼ In some scatter-plot graphs, a straight or curved line is drawn through the entire data set to show the general trend in the data. A straight line that mathematically fits the data best is called a *regression line*. Alternatively, a mathematical function that best fits the data may describe a curved line, often termed a *best-fit curve*. (To practice making and interpreting regression lines, see the Scientific Skills Exercises in Chapters 3, 10, and 34.)



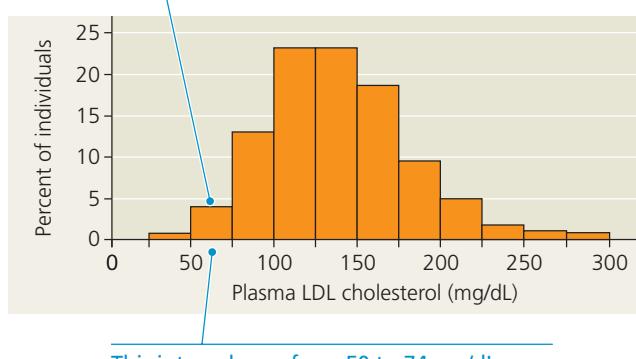
The regression line can be expressed as a mathematical equation. It allows you to predict the value of the dependent variable for any value of the independent variable within the range of the data set and, less commonly, beyond the range of the data.

▼ A **bar graph** is a kind of graph in which the independent variable represents groups or non-numerical categories and the values of the dependent variable(s) are shown by bars. (To practice making and interpreting bar graphs, see the Scientific Skills Exercises in Chapters 1, 9, 18, 20, 22, 25, 27, 29, 33, 35, 39, 51, 52, and 54.)



► A variant of a bar graph called a **histogram** can be made for numeric data by first grouping, or “binning,” the variable plotted on the *x*-axis into intervals of equal width. The “bins” may be integers or ranges of numbers. In the histogram at right, the intervals are 25 mg/dL wide. The height of each bar shows the percent (or alternatively, the number) of experimental subjects whose characteristics can be described by one of the intervals plotted on the *x*-axis. (To practice making and interpreting histograms, see the Scientific Skills Exercises in Chapters 12, 14, and 42.)

The height of this bar shows the percent of individuals (about 4%) whose plasma LDL cholesterol levels are in the range indicated on the *x*-axis.



## Glossary of Scientific Inquiry Terms

See Concept 1.3 for more discussion of the process of scientific inquiry.

**control group** In a controlled experiment, a set of subjects that lacks (or does not receive) the specific factor being tested. Ideally, the control group should be identical to the experimental group in other respects.

**controlled experiment** An experiment in which an experimental group is compared with a control group that varies only in the factor being tested.

**data** Recorded observations.

**deductive reasoning** A type of logic in which specific results are predicted from a general premise.

**dependent variable** A variable whose value is measured during an experiment or other test to see whether it is influenced by changes in another variable (the independent variable).

**experiment** A scientific test, carried out under controlled conditions, involving manipulation of one or more factors in a system in order to see the effects of those changes.

**experimental group** A set of subjects that has (or receives) the specific factor being tested in a controlled experiment.

**hypothesis** A testable explanation for a set of observations based on the available data and guided by inductive reasoning. A hypothesis is narrower in scope than a theory.

**independent variable** A variable whose value is manipulated or changed during an experiment or other test to reveal possible effects on another variable (the dependent variable).

**inductive reasoning** A type of logic in which generalizations are based on a large number of specific observations.

**inquiry** The search for information and explanation, often focusing on specific questions.

**model** A physical or conceptual representation of a natural phenomenon.

**prediction** In deductive reasoning, a forecast that follows logically from a hypothesis. By testing predictions, experiments may allow certain hypotheses to be rejected.

**theory** An explanation that is broader in scope than a hypothesis, generates new hypotheses, and is supported by a large body of evidence.

**variable** A factor that varies in an experiment or other test.

## Chi-Square ( $\chi^2$ ) Distribution Table

To use the table, find the row that corresponds to the degrees of freedom in your data set. (The degrees of freedom is the number of categories of data minus 1.) Move along that row to the pair of values that your calculated  $\chi^2$  value lies between. Move up from those numbers to the probabilities at the top of the columns to find the probability range for your  $\chi^2$  value. A probability of 0.05 or less is generally considered significant. (To practice using the chi-square test, see the Scientific Skills Exercise in Chapter 15.)

| Degrees of Freedom (df) | Probability |      |      |      |      |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------------------------|-------------|------|------|------|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
|                         | 0.95        | 0.90 | 0.80 | 0.70 | 0.50 | 0.30  | 0.20  | 0.10  | 0.05  | 0.01  | 0.001 |
| 1                       | 0.004       | 0.02 | 0.06 | 0.15 | 0.45 | 1.07  | 1.64  | 2.71  | 3.84  | 6.64  | 10.83 |
| 2                       | 0.10        | 0.21 | 0.45 | 0.71 | 1.39 | 2.41  | 3.22  | 4.61  | 5.99  | 9.21  | 13.82 |
| 3                       | 0.35        | 0.58 | 1.01 | 1.42 | 2.37 | 3.66  | 4.64  | 6.25  | 7.82  | 11.34 | 16.27 |
| 4                       | 0.71        | 1.06 | 1.65 | 2.19 | 3.36 | 4.88  | 5.99  | 7.78  | 9.49  | 13.28 | 18.47 |
| 5                       | 1.15        | 1.61 | 2.34 | 3.00 | 4.35 | 6.06  | 7.29  | 9.24  | 11.07 | 15.09 | 20.52 |
| 6                       | 1.64        | 2.20 | 3.07 | 3.83 | 5.35 | 7.23  | 8.56  | 10.64 | 12.59 | 16.81 | 22.46 |
| 7                       | 2.17        | 2.83 | 3.82 | 4.67 | 6.35 | 8.38  | 9.80  | 12.02 | 14.07 | 18.48 | 24.32 |
| 8                       | 2.73        | 3.49 | 4.59 | 5.53 | 7.34 | 9.52  | 11.03 | 13.36 | 15.51 | 20.09 | 26.12 |
| 9                       | 3.33        | 4.17 | 5.38 | 6.39 | 8.34 | 10.66 | 12.24 | 14.68 | 16.92 | 21.67 | 27.88 |
| 10                      | 3.94        | 4.87 | 6.18 | 7.27 | 9.34 | 11.78 | 13.44 | 15.99 | 18.31 | 23.21 | 29.59 |

## Mean and Standard Deviation

The **mean** is the sum of all data points in a data set divided by the number of data points. The mean (or average) represents a “typical” or central value around which the data points are clustered. The mean of a variable  $x$  (denoted by  $\bar{x}$ ) is calculated from the following equation:

$$\bar{x} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i$$

In this formula,  $n$  is the number of observations, and  $x_i$  is the value of the  $i$ th observation of variable  $x$ ; the “ $\sum$ ” symbol indicates that the  $n$  values of  $x_i$  are to be summed. (To practice calculating the mean, see the Scientific Skills Exercises in Chapters 32 and 34.)

The **standard deviation** provides a measure of the variation found in a set of data points. The standard deviation of a variable  $x$  (denoted  $s_x$ ) is calculated from the following equation:

$$s_x = \sqrt{\frac{\sum_{i=1}^n (x_i - \bar{x})^2}{n-1}}$$

In this formula,  $n$  is the number of observations,  $x_i$  is the value of the  $i$ th observation of variable  $x$ , and  $\bar{x}$  is the mean of  $x$ ; the “ $\sum$ ” symbol indicates that the  $n$  values of  $(x_i - \bar{x})^2$  are to be summed. (To practice calculating standard deviation, see the Scientific Skills Exercises in Chapters 32 and 34.)